CONTENTS

巻頭詞	素 / Preface	
	JATCO Technical Review第3号にむけて	池田 孝一 1
	Toward Publication of JATCO Technical Review No. 3	Koichi IKEDA
寄る	高 / Contribution	
- J 11	The Auto Industry Future: A New Business Model and New Powertrain Techn	ology
		Dr. David E. Cole 3
特	集 / Special Feature	
	1. 新スケルトンの決定プロセス 加藤	達也 住 泰夫6
	Decision Process for a New 5-speed AT Schematic Tatsuya k	CATO Yasuo SUMI
	2. 新型 5 速AT用パワートレイン部品に採用された軽量化技術	
	Weight Reduction Technologies for Powertrain Parts of a New 5-speed AT	
	山口 俊男 杉原 剛史 稲葉 哲也	白戸宏一郎16
	Toshio YAMAGUCHI Tsuyoshi SUGIHARA Tetsuya INABA K	Couichirou SHIRATO
	3. 大容量小型トルクコンバータの開発	
	Development of a Compact Torque Converter with High Torque Capacity	
	岡田 克彦 牧野 哲也 石川 昌範	山本 毅23
	Katsuhiko OKADA Tetsuya MAKINO Masanori ISHIKAWA Ta	akeshi YAMAMOTO
	4. MATLABを用いた5速AT変速制御開発	
	Development of Shift Control for a 5-speed AT Using MATLAB	
	今村 達也 佐藤 理 佐野 一仁	
	Tatsuya IMAMURA Osamu SATO Kazuhito SANO	
	5. リニア型インヒビタスイッチの開発 渡辺 真司	矢田 宏之38
	·	BE Hiroyuki YADA
	6. 電子キャリブレーションによるソレノイド油圧精度向上	
	Improvement of Solenoid Pressure Control Accuracy by Electronic Calibration	
	石井 繁 杉内 仁 野武 久雄 遠藤 勝久	
	Shigeru ISHII Masashi SUGIUCHI Hisao NOBU Katsuhisa ENDOU	Kaoru FojisminiA
♠女	· 解説 / Technical Papers	
HIM! /	1. バンドブレーキの摩擦係合・解放特性解析	
	Analysis of Band Brake Engagement and Disengagement Behavior in an Autor	matic Transmission
		加藤 芳章 ········51
		Yoshiaki KATO
	2. 音響ホログラフィによるベルトノイズ放射音解析	
	Acoustic Holography Analysis of Radiation Noise Caused by CVT Belt Noise	
	横山 嘉昭 板谷 洋 青木 義	
	Yoshiaki YOKOYAMA Hiroshi ITAYA Yoshinori A	
	3. トロイダルCVTの燃費向上に関する考察	
	Improvement of Toroidal CVT Fuel Economy	
	, 日比 利文 住 泰夫	竹内 徹66
	Toshifumi HIBI Yasuo SUMI	Tohru TAKEUCHI

4. IHAT(Integrated Hybrid Automatic Transmission)の開発	
Development of an Integrated Hybrid Automatic Transmission (IHAT)	
藤川 雅人 吹野 真人 中島 健治	望月 政治77
Masato FUJIKAWA Masato FUKINO Kenji NAKASHIMA	Masaharu MOCHIZUKI
5. JEPS活動について 牧野 克己	小川 博由86
The JEPS Activity Katsumi MAKI	NO Hiroyoshi OGAWA
6. ダウンサイジング版新図面管理システムについて	高田 仁94
New Downsized Version of Drawing Management System	Hitoshi TAKADA
TOPICS	
1 OF IC3	小野田 司100
Exhibitions at the Frankfurt and Tokyo Motor Shows	Tsukasa ONODA
Exhibitions at the Frankfult and Tokyo Motor Shows	Tourasa ONODA
商品ラインナップ / Product Line-up	108
新商品紹介 / Introduction of New Products	吉田 友久109
1. JAGUAR向けインテリジェント5速AT JF506E-L(FPD)の紹介	
Introducing the JF506E-L(FPD) Smart 5-speed AT for Jaguar Application 2. FF車用5速AT JF506E-M(FPF)の紹介 西村 勲	
, , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , ,	JRA Takayuki HARADA
3." JR006E "型 FR車用トロイダルCVTのスポーティ車への適用	DRA Takayuki HARADA
Introducing the JR006E Toroidal CVT for Rear-wheel-drive Sporty Vehic	Noc
河村 泰孝 吉田 武	
Yasutaka KAWAMURA Takeo YOSI	
Tuodiana 1777/7/17/17/17/17/17/17/17/17/17/17/17/	TIDA TAING TAINEGOTH
商品紹介 / Introduction of Products	
1. RR車用3速AT JF302E-F(FBF)の紹介	123
Introducing the JF302E-F(FBF) 3-speed AT for Rear-drive Cars	
2. FF車用4速AT F04B(ZY)の紹介	125
Introducing the F04B(ZY) 4-Speed AT for Front-drive Cars	
3. FF車用4速AT JF404E-W(FDO)の紹介	127
Introducing the JF404E-W (FDO) 4-speed AT for Front-drive Cars	
4. FF車用4速AT JF405E-H(FRO)の紹介	129
Introducing the JF405E-H (FRO) 4-speed AT for Front-drive Cars	
5. FF車用4速AT JF405E-Q(FRA)の紹介	131
Introducing the JF405E-Q (FRA) 4-speed AT for Front-drive Cars	
6. FF車用5速AT JF506E-R(FPO)の紹介	133
Introducing the JF506E-R (FPO) 5-speed AT for Front-drive Cars	
7. 2.5Lクラス中型FF車用 スチールベルト式CVT(ADO)の紹介 ···········	135
Introducing the Steel-belt CVT (ADO) for 2.5-liter Class Midsize Front-d	rive Cars
事業所紹介 / Introduction of Business Operation Offices	
1. 新横浜開発センターの紹介	木村 良幸137
Introducing the Shin-Yokohama Engineering Center	Yoshiyuki KIMURA
2. ジヤトコ・ヨーロッパ(JEG)の紹介	吉本 卓郎·············140
An Introduction of the JATCO Europe GmbH	Takuro YOSHIMOTO
特許紹介 / Patents	1 4 3



JATCO Technical Review第3号にむけて

Toward Publication of JATCO Technical Review No. 3

取締役 常務 池 田 孝 一 Senior Vice President & Member of the Board Koichi IKEDA

第3号発刊を迎える本年2002年は私達にとって三菱自動車グループのAT、CVT部門との事業統合を迎えるというエポックメーキングな年になりました。JATCOとTransTechnologyが合併した1999年当時予測されたことの一つがわずか3年で実現したことになります。我々の方向の正しさが証明された喜びと共に社会の変化の早さに驚くばかりです。

AT・CVTがあるだけで商品性を誇示できる時代は終わって、自動車メーカーの多種類の車種の一つ一つにジャストフィットする品揃えがますます 求められるようになりました。そのためにはAT・CVTの開発生産にますます莫大な投資が必要で、もう1社だけでは維持できなくなっているという事情があります。自動車メーカーをこえて車のプラットフォームの統合が進むように、この潮流はまだまだ進むと思います。我々AT・CVT専門ユニットメーカーにはこのような自動車メーカーのニーズに対応して、複数の顧客(車)に対応できる基本ユニットの開発をおこなう必要があります。これらのユニットを自動車メーカーが御自分でなる 以上の品質で、しかも量産並の価格でご提供することが我々の役割です。

高い量産品質と安い価格を実現するためには、全社レベルでは第2号でご紹介したQS9000品質マネージメントシステムに則り運営していくわけです。その中で我々JATCOとしてのユニークな内容として開発では従来から機能展開に基づく漏れのない品質作り込みをやってきました。これをさらに部品サプライヤーまで含む生産まで繋げて、工程能力に裏打ちされた一気通貫な品質保証システ

The year 2002, marking publication of the third issue of the *JATCO Technical Review*, has become a momentous one for us with the announcement of the integration of our transmission business with the AT/CVT division of Mitsubishi Motors Corporation. This was one of the possibilities envisioned at the time JATCO Corporation and TransTechnology Ltd. merged in 1999, and it has now become a reality in a short span of just three years. We are pleased that it shows we are on the right track and can only marvel at the rapid pace of change in society today.

The day has passed when we could take pride in the appeal of our product lineup simply because it included ATs and CVTs. There are increasingly stronger demands today for a lineup of products that perfectly match each of many different models offered by the automakers. That requires ever more immense investments in AT/CVT development and production, and it is no longer possible for any one company alone to maintain that level of investment. The present trend toward the integration of vehicle platforms transcending individual automakers will continue for some time to come. As a component manufacturer specializing in ATs and CVTs, it is essential for us to develop basic units capable of being adapted to multiple vehicle models in order to meet the needs of our automaker customers. Our mission is to provide such units at quality levels surpassing even those of the automakers themselves and also at prices equal to mass-produced products.

To achieve high mass production quality and low prices, all operations throughout our company are managed in accordance with the QS9000 Quality Management System featured in the second issue of the Review. Under this system, we have made it a unique trait of our company over the years to build in the highest level of quality without any oversights based on functional deployment in the development process. Moreover, to make sure that same level of outstanding quality extends to production, including our parts suppliers, we have put in place a comprehensive quality assurance system backed by excellent process

ムを構築しています。漏れのない作り込みという のは、煎じ詰めれば無駄のないと言う事になり高 次元なレベルで品質とコストの両立が可能です。 我々の専門性の証としてこの活動を全社の一人一 人が自分のものにするまで続けていく必要があり ます。もう一つAT・CVT技術に期待されるものに 車という商品の魅力品質の発揮があります。AT・ CVTが従来の動力性能を担う役割は変わりません が、お客様の快適さの要求はますます高くなり、 燃費も当たり前品質から差別化品質に変わってき ています。ここにおいては我々JATCOは車両メー カーを母体にしているという国内外の競合ユニッ トメーカーには無い強みを持っています。一般の お客様、自動車メーカーのニーズを先取して商品 に生かしていくことが短縮される車両開発にミー トし売れる車作りに貢献して行ける道です。

一方我々は他社に先駆けた先進技術の商品を世に送り出してきました。フル電子制御AT、FR5速AT、高トルクCVT、トロイダルCVT等々です。これらの商品はいずれもその時点、世の中に真似をするものが無かった独創的なものだと思います。よく「必要は発明の母」と言いますが、ニーズ自体は普遍的に存在します。それではこれらの先進技術を生み出し育てたものはなんだったのでしょうか。それは技術者一人一人の情熱だと思います。人のやっていないことに挑戦して自分を試したい、あるいは完成した時には世の中に驚き、感動を与えたい、そういう技術者一人一人の夢や希望が実現したものが先進技術の商品です。

AT・CVTという商品に要求される変化もますます激しくなって行きます。先進商品を生み出し次の時代の主力商品に育てていく。我々はそれを実現できる技術を持っており、また当社にはそれらの夢や希望を大切にする風土とそれらに同調し育て量産まで結び付ける技術があります。今もそして今後もAT・CVT技術を通して、車社会の発展を支え荷うJATCOでありたいと願っています。

capabilities. Building in high quality without any omissions essentially boils down to a condition of no waste or inefficiency, making it possible to achieve an optimum balance of quality and cost. As testimony to our professionalism, all employees throughout the company continue these quality assurance activities to the point where they become second nature.

Another attribute expected of AT and CVT technologies is that they enable vehicles to display their charm and qualities as a product. While the conventional role of ATs and CVTs as the units responsible for transferring power has not changed, customers are continually demanding ever-higher levels of comfort. And fuel economy is also changing from a taken-forgranted quality to one that differentiates products. In this regard, JATCO has a unique strength not possessed by other rival domestic or overseas component manufacturers in that our parent company is an automaker. This enables us to anticipate the needs of ordinary customers and vehicle manufacturers and to embody solutions in our products within today's shorter cycles for vehicle development, thus providing an avenue for us to contribute to the creation of vehicles that sell well in the marketplace.

At JATCO, we have led other companies in bringing out products incorporating cutting-edge technologies. Full-range electronically controlled ATs, 5-speed ATs for rear-wheel-drive cars, CVTs with high torque capacity and toroidal CVTs are just a few examples. All of these products were original concepts that did not imitate anything on the market at the time they were released. While it is often said that "necessity is the mother of invention," needs themselves exist universally. That being the case, what made it possible to create and nurture these cutting-edge technologies? I believe the answer lies in the passion of each and every engineer; that is, a desire to test and challenge oneself by doing something no one else has ever done or a desire to astonish and excite the world through one's success. These dreams and hopes of every engineer are what are translated into products embodying cutting-edge technologies.

Ever more radical changes will be demanded of ATs and CVTs in the coming years. Our aim to create advanced products and nurture them into the company's mainstay products in the next era. We possess the technologies for accomplishing that and a corporate culture that treasures such dreams and aspirations, as well as the skills for working in concert to take new ideas to the stage of mass production. Today and in the years ahead, we want JATCO to continue to support the development of the automobile-based society through the provision of advanced AT/CVT technologies.

The Auto Industry Future: A New Business Model and New Powertrain Technology



Dr. David E. Cole*

The world's automotive industry is in the midst of a very turbulent and challenging period. Certainly, this is the case in North America. The industry is undergoing fundamental change in all facets of the business with internal restructuring, mergers, acquisitions, alliances, and, in general, a significant alteration in the business model. Pressures on the industry today are almost overwhelming with ever-increasing consumer expectations, challenging government regulations, intensifying competition, and an explosion in new knowledge, including (of course) technology.

The industry is highly unstable and certainly not in its final form. The old business model is broken and must be repaired in a manner that fundamentally redefines how business in this industry will function in the future. This notion is certainly amplified by profitability trends that have shown declining profits for both manufacturers and suppliers, even as automotive sales volumes have remained high. Still, if we look ahead to the auto industry of five to six years in the future, I believe we will see a solid collection of successful manufacturers and suppliers. The market will be strong with a wide array of great products and happy customers, but not everyone will be there. Only the strong will survive.

We must keep in mind that this industry is an extremely important factor in the economies of the developed world, and, of course, an increasingly significant factor in the developing world as well. In the United States, there are more than 1.8 million jobs directly supported by the automotive industry with more than 75 percent of those in the supplier community.

Despite the challenges of the past few years, we see evidence of positive things happening in this industry, many of them prompted by the incredible competition of the past few years. It is a much smarter industry. We have witnessed massive automotive platform and component set rationalization. The product development process is faster and better. Manufacturing flexibility is improving significantly. Processes are far strongerwhether we are considering marketing, training, or product development; and there is much greater discipline to follow these processes. Supplier competence has also improved dramatically, although there are still many questions in this part of industry. Our office recently conducted a survey of lower tier suppliers and found that their information technology (IT) competence is still not what it needs to be to facilitate a move to the new business model over the next several years. Finally, today, it is "lean" everything. We have seen dramatic improvements in productivity as the principles of "lean" are propagated throughout the industry.

As noted earlier, the business model of the industry is broken, and there is no owner's manual or road map to

R&D expenditures by this industry are over \$18 million annually, which is greater than any other single industrial sector in the U.S. economy. The economic contribution of the average automotive job was \$137,000 in 1998, well over twice that of the average job in our economy. Furthermore, the economic multiplier for a job with an automotive manufacturer today is 7.6. That is, there are 6.6 jobs elsewhere in the economy for every job in an auto manufacturer's facility. This is an important industry, and it will continue to be a significant industry even as it goes through major restructuring.

^{*} President, Center for Automotive Research (CAR) and a Management Partner, Altarum Institute

lead us to the new business model. Let us consider some key words that help frame the old model. We can then begin to see the contrast with the new model that is emerging. The old model has been historically slow, with much paper, vertical integration and bureaucracy. It is focused on talking and is linear or sequential. We have worked very hard to make it lean. It is highly legalistic in terms of relationships. It focuses on the individual. It is often very regional and highly structured. Acquisitions are important, and the leadership often act like kings. It is a job for life; it is competition; it is the use of physical prototypes; and it is slow.

The emerging new business model is very different; it is *virtual* integration versus *vertical* integration. It is paperless. It is antibureaucratic, with more listening than talking. It is real-time collaboration using virtual prototypes, and it is lean-agile, not just lean. Flexibility is a central feature of the new business model. It is the team rather than the individual. The new business model is globally integrated. Trust is required, and alliances are often favored over acquisitions. The leadership resembles coaches. In fact, the "Big Three" leadership today all demonstrate coach management styles. Dieter Zetsche, Jack Smith, Rick Wagoner, Bill Ford, and Nick Scheele are all leaders with "coach" personalities, meaning their role is to be on the sidelines, to pick the team, to formulate the strategy, rather than be the quarterback or linemen that play the game. I believe this management style is absolutely essential in supporting a high-performance new business model. It is "coopetition": cooperating and competing between organizations. It is people flow through our organizations, recognizing that the typical young person today expects to have eight to ten different jobs. It is eenabled, and, very importantly, it is fast. The transformation is happening right now in this industry, but not everyone or every organization will be able to successfully adapt to the new business model.

Over the past several years, we have engaged in a great deal of discussion on the "old economy" and the "new economy." In fact, two years ago, we said that if you were not part of the "new economy," you were living in the past. Then we began to ask questions about the "new economy," about the "dot coms" and the many different dimensions of the "new economy." We finally asked, "Where's the value?" We also began to recognize that the "old economy" produced the things needed to

live. It built cars, trucks, washing machines, grew food, made clothes, and built houses. Right now, in real time, in front of our eyes, the best of the "new economy" is being merged with the "old economy" to create the "value economy." For the auto industry, this is what the new business model is all about.

Product technology is at the threshold of a major revolution in the years just ahead, prompted in part by intense competition and increasing demands by customers, but also by regulatory pressure. Here, in the United States, the fuel economy requirements are particularly challenging, and most industry observers expect the current Corporate Average Fuel Economy (CAFE) standards of 20.7 miles per gallon for light trucks and 27.5 miles per gallon for cars to be tightened considerably, putting further pressure on the manufacturers and their suppliers. There is a rapidly growing movement by the industry to become more "green" in the broadest sense with the rapid emergence of the concept of sustainable transportation. Many of the manufacturers have come together to form the World Business Council for Sustainable Development (WBCSD). Sustainability is a multidimensional concept encompassing exhaust emissions, fuel economy, global warming, safety, congestion, recycling, and mobility for handicapped and older drivers. I believe we will see a major push in the next few years on the part of the industry to work more closely with governments and nongovernmental organizations to lessen the negative impact of automobiles and light trucks.

In product technology, we are, indeed, at the edge of a revolution that encompasses a broad range of technology for future vehicles. It certainly includes the powertrain, but also telematics, safety systems, advanced materials, electronics, and (of course) new and improved manufacturing processes. The powertrain is a particularly important area of the vehicle. Today, we are increasingly optimistic about the prospect for significant improvements in conventional powertrains, as well as the emergence of advanced powertrains, such as heatengine electric hybrids and even fuel cells. While there has been growing interest in more exotic alternatives, including the hybrid and fuel cells, it is important that we not underestimate the potential for more conventional powertrains. This includes significant improvements in the basic spark-ignited internal combustion engine with a variety of advancements, such as gasoline direct injection, variable compression ratio, further advances in

friction reduction, and more precise control of the basic combustion process, in addition to other factors. Furthermore, advanced technology diesel engines are proving to be particularly important, as evidenced by their success in many areas of the world. These engines promise a 30-to-40 percent fuel economy increase over their gasoline, spark-ignited engine counterparts. There are serious concerns regarding the exhaust emission performance of the advanced diesel-particularly here in the United States-but the promise is great and this powerplant cannot be ignored for the future.

Another key part of the powertrain is the transmission. While there are some improvements being made in automatic transmissions, and even the emergence of production of the so-called automatic stick shift, one of the more intriguing designs is the continuously variable transmission (CVT). In fact, today, CVT transmissions are in production around the world-generally using the segmented metal belt van Doorne principle. Unfortunately, there have been limitations with this transmission design regarding torque and power capacity. One of the more exciting potential alternatives is the Toroidial continuously variable transmission that is being developed by JATCO. This transmission has exhibited the potential for considerably greater torque and power transmission capability, and must be viewed as an important competitor in the powertrain race in the years ahead.

Ultimately, any candidate to replace our current powertrain must at least equal the performance attributes of today's designs, and to be seriously considered, it must exceed it in some aspects. Today, the hybrid-electric seems to have significant potential. In fact, several varieties of hybrids are available in low-production vehicles. The particular challenges that remain with a hybrid include the controls, electric drivetrain, and, of course, the battery energy storage system. It is still highly uncertain whether the hybrid will be the long-term winner in the powertrain race. The fuel cell, as noted earlier, has made remarkable progress over the past few years, but still is far from being competitive with the current powertrain. It should be noted that with the fuel cell, there are a number of

important subsystems, all of which present significant challenges. These range from the fuel cell stack itself where the hydrogen and oxygen react to create electrical power, to the electric drivetrain and hydrogen supply and storage systems. Significant inventions are required on all fronts if this technology is to become viable.

From an energy perspective, there is still great promise in improved conventional powertrains, as well as with heat-engine electric hybrids and fuel cells. The ultimate decision from a fuel economy perspective must be based on a true "well-to-wheel" analysis. That is, one cannot look just at the powertrain, but must begin with original energy source through delivery of the tractive force driving the vehicle to determine the true system level efficiency.

One of the more interesting aspects of the advanced powertrain story is that when improvements in basic technology are being made at a high rate, investment in high production tooling is unwise. It is not until the rate of technical improvement slows that it makes sense to invest in high production equipment and facilities. If you invest too early, by the time that facility is in production, it could be producing out-of-date products. Today, in most areas of automotive technology, particularly in the powertrain, we are still on the steep slope of the improvement curve. With the fuel cell just two or three years ago, we were looking at costs that were a thousand times those of the current powertrain. Recently, that has been reduced to perhaps 10 times the cost. But this is still not good enough; the goal is one times cost, or less.

What are we going to be driving tomorrow? What will our cars and trucks look like? What kind of features will they have? Certainly, regulations will be a factor in that decision, but I would also suggest that, ultimately, in a market-based economy, economics will be the determining factor. We are probably not going to have fuel cells if they are five times the cost of internal combustion engines. The market won't allow it. And basically, in my judgment, it is economics and value that will drive automotive products into the future.

新スケルトンの決定プロセス

Decision Process for a New 5-speed AT Schematic

加藤 達也^{*} Tatsuya KATO 住 泰夫**

Yasuo SUMI

抄 録 当社では日産自動車(株)様のご協力のもと, 新型5速ATを開発しニッサンシーマ,スカイラインを はじめとして順次拡大採用の予定である.

開発された5速ATの各要素の締結の仕方(スケルトン)は、このATの開発目的の一つである燃費向上、すなわち小型・軽量化・フリクション低減を達成させるため、広範囲の可能性の中から選ばれたものである.

本稿では,新型5速ATのスケルトン選定プロセスについて解説する.

Summary With the cooperation of Nissan Motor Co., Ltd., we developed a new 5-speed AT that has been adopted on the Nissan Cima and Skyline and its application will be expanded to other model lines in the future. The schematic for the engagement of the elements of this new 5-speed AT was selected from among a wide range of possible candidates with the aim of reducing the size, weight and friction of the unit so as to improve fuel economy, which was one of the major development objectives. This paper explains the process by which the schematic of this new 5-speed AT was determined.

1.はじめに

日産自動車(株)様が1989年に世界で初めて乗用車用5速ATを発売以来,ベンツ,BMW,トヨタ自動車などから相次いで5速ATが採用されてきた.しかし,当時の5速ATの多くは,従来の4速ATに副変速機を付加したものが多く,重量,寸法,コスト等の観点から広く受け入れらなかった.しかし,ベンツが新しく5速専用のATを開発して以降,燃費向上の観点などから各社ともに5速専用ATの開発を加速させ,いまや,欧州,日本を中心に高級乗用車において広く普及してきている.

今回開発した新型5速ATは従来の構造にとらわれることなく、最適なスケルトン選択から開発をスタートさせた.その結果、世界トップレベルの小型・軽量化を達成し、また、ATのフリクション低減を実現し、燃費向上に貢献することができた.このスケルトン選定のプロセスならびに筆者等が開発した自動スケルトン創製手法について解説する.

2. 遊星歯車列による変速原理

FR用多段ATにおいては、遊星歯車機構が多く採用されている。これらは、入力軸と出力軸の間に複数の遊星歯車、クラッチ、ブレーキ等を同一軸上に配置することにより、コンパクト化が達成できるためと考えられるが、ギヤ段実現のためのバリエーションは、遊星歯車をいくつ使うかに始まり、その種類は実に多種多様である。

1. Introduction

After Nissan Motor Co. launched the world's first passenger car fitted with a 5-speed AT in 1989, 5-speed ATs were adopted in succession by Mercedes-Benz, BMW, Toyota and others. At that time, though, most of the 5-speed ATs had been created by adding an auxiliary transmission to existing 4-speed ATs, and they were not well received from the standpoints of weight, size, cost and other aspects. However, following the subsequent development of an all-new 5-speed AT by Mercedes-Benz, manufacturers accelerated their efforts to develop new 5-speed ATs from the ground up for the purpose of improving fuel economy and other performance parameters. Today, 5-speed ATs are widely used on luxury cars particularly in Europe and Japan.

The development of our new 5-speed AT (JR507E) began with the selection of the optimum schematics, without sticking to the conventional AT structure. As a result, this new AT is one of the world's smallest and lightest units. The reduction of friction in the AT also contributes to improved fuel economy. The process by which the schematic was selected is described here along with the method we have developed for creating AT schematics automatically.

2. Principle of Shifting by Means of Planetary Gearsets

Stepped ATs designed for use on rear-wheel-drive cars often adopt a planetary gear train. Presumably, this is because a compact package can be achieved by positioning the planetary gearsets, clutches, brakes and other components on the same axis between the input and output shafts. The selection of variations for achieving the different speed ranges begins with the question of how many planetary gearsets to use, and there are an enormous number of gear train varieties.

JATCO USA, Inc.

^{**} 第四商品開発グループ Product Development Group No.4

レバーアナロジッの原理により遊星歯車列の回転 速度,ギヤ比を分析する方法は既に,Benford & Leisungらによって公開されているが,一般には共 線図法と言われ、1本または複数のレバーにより表 示することで理解しやすくなる . Fig. 1の3速ATで 多く使われてきたシンプソンギヤ列スケルトンを レバー図にしてみる.サンギヤ(S),キャリヤ(C), リングギヤ(R)からなる1つの遊星歯車を1本のレ バーとして,S,C,Rの力の入出点を なる記号で 表す.この を節点と呼ぶ.Fig. 1の遊星歯車の各 要素間を平行連結するとFig. 2の左のように表現で きる. さらに, 2つのレバーも右図のように1つに まとめて,複合化して4節点で書き表すことが出来 る. すなわち, このレバーの入力節点や反力節点 (ブレーキ節点)を切り換え出力節点において必要 なギヤ比を得ている.このレバーの機械的拡大率 がギヤ比と同じであることが知られていることか ら,レバー図に関して,次のようなことが言える.

- 1)アンダードライブの場合,出力節点は入力節点と反力節点の間に来る.
- 2)オーバードライブの場合,入力節点は出力節点と反力節点の間に来る.
- 3)直結の場合,反力節点を解放し,入力節点を2つとし,遊星歯車列をインターロックさせる.
- 4)後進の場合,出力節点と入力節点の間に反力節点を置く.

Benford and Leisung previously announced their method of analyzing the rotational speeds and gear ratios of planetary gearsets based on the lever analogy principle.(1) In general, though, the collinear diagram method, whereby one or several levers are used to represent the gear train, is easier to understand. Figure 1 shows the schematic of the Simpson gear train that is commonly used in 3-speed ATs. We will express this schematic in a lever diagram. The single planetary gearset consisting of a sun gear (S), a carrier (C) and a ring gear (R) is represented as one lever, and the points where the forces of S, R and C are input and output are indicated by solid squares (), which are referred to as nodes. By connecting the elements of the planetary gearset in Fig. 1 in parallel, we can represent it in a lever diagram as shown on the left side of Fig. 2. In addition, two levers can be combined into one as shown in the right-hand diagram to create a composite lever diagram with four nodes. In other words, by switching between the input node and reaction node (brake node) of this lever, the required gear ratio is obtained at the output node. Since it is known that the mechanical magnification of the lever is equal to the gear ratios, the following observations can be made about lever diagrams.

- (1) In the case of an underdrive, the output node comes between the input node and the reaction node.
- (2) In the case of an overdrive, the input node comes between the output node and the reaction node.
- (3) In the case of direct engagement, a planetary gearset is interlocked by releasing the reaction node and employing two input nodes.
- (4) In the case of reverse, the reaction node is placed between the output node and the input node.

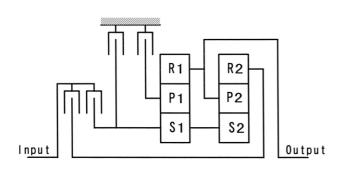


Fig. 1 Schematic of a 3-speed AT built with a Simpson gear train

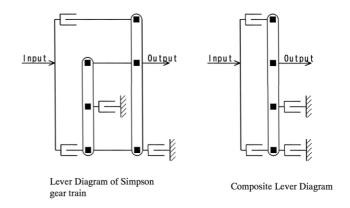


Fig. 2 Lever diagram of a Simpson gear train and its composite model

3.3 遊星歯車列による多段ATのスケルトン

4速ATにおいては2つの遊星歯車を用いる例が多 いが,5速以上のATになると適当な変速比巾や段間 比,後進ギヤ比を得るために一般的に3遊星以上の 遊星歯車を用いる. 例えば, Fig. 3は3遊星歯車列を 用いた6速スケルトンの例である.このスケルトン を3つのレバーによって表したものをFig. 4に示す. また,3遊星歯車の場合,その要素間を4本の部材 により平行連結しており、従って、複合化してFig. 4の右図のように5節点のレバー図で表される.こ こで遊星歯車のサンギヤ,リングギヤ,キャリヤ の区別を考慮せず,かつ入力節点,出力節点,反 力節点などの接続を省略して表示したものをFig. 5 に示すようにCraig S. Rossはシルエット2)と称して いる.前述の6速スケルトンにおいては,このシル エットに入力切り換えクラッチ,反力切り換えブ レーキを配置し、それらの切換によって、前進6速、 後進1速を得ているが,それらのクラッチやブレー キ以外に, Fig. 6のように, 平行連結している部材 にクラッチ(インターナルクラッチと称す)を挿入 したり、遊星歯車をインターロックするためのク ラッチ(インターロッククラッチと称す)を配置す ることができる.

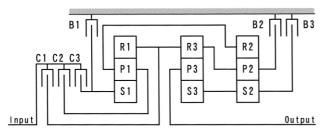


Fig. 3 Schematic of a 6-speed AT

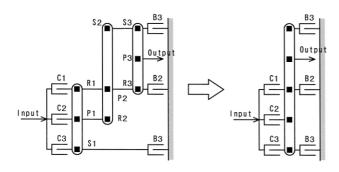


Fig. 4 Lever diagrams of a 6-speed AT schematic with three planetary gearsets

3. Schematic of a 6-speed AT Based on Three Planetary Gearsets

Four-speed ATs are usually built with two planetary gearsets, but ATs with five or more speeds generally have a minimum of three planetary gearsets in order to obtain a suitable range of gear ratios, ratios between gears and reverse gear ratio. For example, Fig. 3 shows the schematic of a 6-speed AT that incorporates three planetary gearsets. This schematic is represented in a lever diagram in Fig. 4 using three levers. In the case of three planetary gearsets, the elements are connected in parallel using four members. Accordingly, they can be combined and expressed in a lever diagram with five nodes as shown on the right side of Fig. 4. If we abbreviate the connections, such as the input, output and reaction nodes, and do not try to distinguish between the sun gear, ring gear and carrier of the planetary gearsets, we obtain a representation like that shown in Fig. 5, which Ross has called a silhouette.(2) In the 6-speed AT schematic in Fig. 3, six forward speeds and one reverse speed are obtained by positioning an input switching clutch and a reaction switching brake in the silhouette and switching between them. Besides this clutch and brake, an internal clutch can also be inserted in the m embers connected in parallel and an interlock clutch can be positioned for interlocking the planetary gears, as shown in Fig. 6.

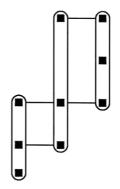


Fig. 5 Silhouette

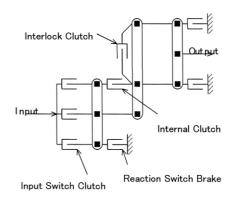


Fig. 6 Clutch and brake arrangement

Fig. 7はGMの商用車用ATに用いられているスケルトンで、6速を3つの遊星歯車と5つの締結要素で実現しているが、このスケルトンでは第1遊星のサンギヤと第2遊星のキャリヤを平行連結している部材にインターナルクラッチ(Fig. 8参照)を配置している.

Fig. 9はベンツの5速ATに用いられているスケルトンで,2つのインターナルクラッチと1つのインターロッククラッチ(Fig. 10参照)を配置し,入力切り換えクラッチを用いていないのが特徴である.

実際のスケルトンを考案する場合には,所定の変速段を実現できるような変速ロジックを有するレバー図を作成し,このレバー図から実際のスケルトンが描けるかの作業を行うが,インターナルクラッチやインターロッククラッチは必ずスケルトンの中に配置する事が可能で,スケルトンを描ける確率が大きくなる.

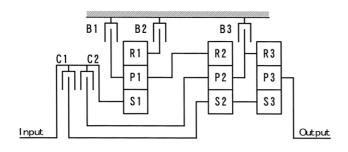


Fig. 7 Schematic of a GM 6-speed AT

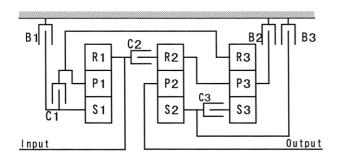


Fig. 9 Schematic of a Mercedes-Benz 5-speed AT

Figure 7 shows the schematic used for an AT fitted on GM commercial vehicles. Six speeds are achieved with three planetary gearsets and five engagement elements. In this schematic, an internal clutch is positioned in the part that connects in parallel the sun gear of the first planetary gearset and the carrier of the second planetary gearset (Fig. 8).

The schematic used for the Mercedes-Benz 5-speed AT is shown in Fig. 9. It incorporates two internal clutches and one interlock clutch (Fig. 10) and is characterized by the absence of an input switching clutch.

In planning an actual transmission schematic, lever diagrams are created that contain the shift logic capable of attaining the prescribed speed ranges. The next operation is to determine whether the actual schematic can be created on the basis of the lever diagrams. If the internal and interlock clutches can be positioned in the schematic without fail, there is a greater probability of being able to create the schematic successfully.

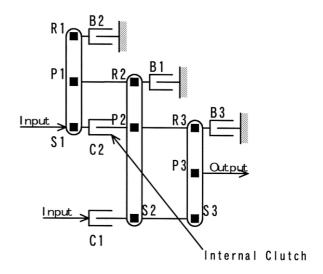


Fig. 8 Lever diagram of the GM 6-speed AT schematic

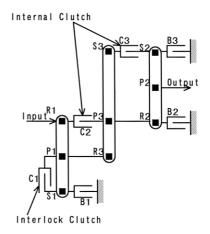


Fig. 10 Lever diagram of the Mercedes-Benz 5-speed AT

4. 遊星歯車列のレバー図の抽出

5速ATのギヤ比としてはアンダードライブ3段, 直結1段,オーバードライブ1段,後進1段を用いる のが一般的であるが,これを実現するためには, 下記の2種が考えられる.

- 1)主変速機のみで上記変速段を得るインテグラルタイプ
- 2)主変速機に副変速機を付加したタイプ.この場合,主変速機にオーバードライブ段を持つものと持たないものに分類される.

いずれの場合も,主変速機は3つの遊星歯車を持つ形式に限定してスケルトンの創製を行った.スケルトン創製の手法についての筆者等の論文3)を参照されたいが,第1のステップであるレバー図の抽出の概略手順は以下となる.

- 1)3遊星のシルエットを全て抽出する.
- 2)上記シルエットの1つを選択し,3本のレバー (遊星歯車を示す)にシングルピニオン遊星かダ ブルピニオン遊星かを配置する.
- 3)上記シルエットの節点に入力節点,出力節点, 反力節点を配置する.
- 4)上記シルエットの平行連結する部材にインターナルクラッチを配置する.
- 5)上記シルエットの3本のレバーにインターロック クラッチを配置する.
- 6)上記シルエットの3本のレバーの各節点にリング ギヤ,サンギヤ,キャリヤを配置する.
- 7)3つの遊星歯車の歯数比を仮定する.
- 8)上記で定義したレバー図の入力節点,反力節点, インターナルクラッチ,インターロッククラッチの各々に締結または解放を定義付け,前進1~ 6速,後進1速の締結ロジックを見つける.見つからなかった場合は,3つの遊星歯車の歯数比を仮定しなおす.
- 9)見つかった場合は隣り合う変速の間で2重掛け替えの有無を調べ,2重掛け替えの有る場合は破棄する.

上記操作の繰り返しにより所定の変速比に対する成立するレバー図を抽出する.なお,この段階で,メンバーの回転数やピニオンの自転回転数も計算し過度となるケースは破棄する.例として,Fig. 3に示す6速スケルトンを抽出した場合,各変速段におけるレバー図はFig. 11のように示される.

4. Extraction of Lever Diagrams for Planetary Gearsets

The gear ratios generally used for a 5-speed AT are three underdrive speeds, one direct engagement speed, one overdrive speed and one reverse speed. The following two approaches can be considered for accomplishing these speeds.

- (1) An integral type that accomplishes the speeds by means of the main transmission alone
- (2) A type that adds an auxiliary transmission to the main transmission

The latter type is divided between those that incorporate an overdrive range in the main transmission and those that do not.

Schematics were created in both cases, with the main transmission being limited to a unit incorporating three planetary gearsets. The method developed by the authors for creating transmission schematics is described elsewhere, so only the general procedure for extracting lever diagrams, which is the first step, is outlined here.

- (1) Extract all silhouettes for the three planetary gearsets.
- (2) Select one of the silhouettes and position either single- or double-pinion planetary gearsets in a three-lever representation showing the planetary gearsets.
- (3) Position the input node, output node and reaction node at the nodes of the silhouette.
- (4) Position internal clutches in the members that form the parallel connections in the silhouette.
- (5) Position interlock clutches in the three levers in the silhouette.
- (6) Position a ring gear, a sun gear and a carrier at each node of the three levers in the silhouette.
- (7) Assume tentative teeth ratios for the three planetary gearsets.
- (8) Define the engagement and release of the input node, reaction node, internal clutch and interlock clutch in the lever diagram defined in the foregoing steps and find the engagement logic for each of the six forward speeds and the one reverse speed. If the logic cannot be found, change the assumed teeth ratios of the three planetary gearsets.
- (9) If the logic is found, investigate whether there is any double transition shifting between adjacent speeds and eliminate any such cases that are found.

By repeating these steps, a valid lever diagram is extracted for the prescribed gear ratios. At this stage, the rotational speed of each element is calculated as well as the self-rotational speed of the pinions, and any cases of excessive speed are thrown away. As an example, the lever diagrams extracted for each speed range of the 6-speed AT schematic in Fig. 6 are like those shown in Fig. 11.

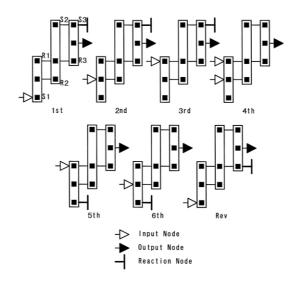


Fig. 11 Lever diagrams of each speed range (for the schematic in Fig. 3)

5. スケルトンの作成方法

前項で抽出したレバー図からスケルトンの成立 を判断するためスケルトン図を作成する必要があ る、従来この作業は紙と鉛筆により経験的な勘を 働かせて作成するため多大の時間と不正確さがつ きものであった.このため,筆者等はこの行程を 自動化して計算機により処理する手法を開発した. 基本的には半導体等の回路を自動的に配線図とし て描き出すための手法としてLeeが開発した格子展 開法4)を用いている、格子展開法とは、Leeのアル ゴリズムに基づいて,セルマップ上の回路の2点間 の配線を自動的に見つけ出す手法であり,配線が 存在する限り必ず見つけだし、しかも最短のもの を発見するという特徴がある. Fig. 12のセルマップ 上の出発点Sから目標点 E に配線したいとする.赤 で示したセル領域は配線禁止セルとする. その行 程を示すと以下となる.

- 1)出発点Sを起点としてラベル値ゼロを与える.
- 2)Sを中心として波紋が順次広がるように,Sからの距離をラベル値として与える(順行程).
- 3)目標点Eに到達したら,今までとは逆にラベル値が1つずつ減少する方向にセルを逆にたどっていく(逆行程).複数の最短経路がある場合は方向に優先順位を設けておく.
- 4)出発点にだどり着くと,最短距離の配線ネットが決定される(Fig. 12の黄色で示したセル).

上記手法により実際にスケルトンを作成した例をFig. 13に示す.ここで,R1,R2,R3はリングギヤ,P1,P2,P3はキャリヤ,S1,S2,S3はサンギヤ,B1,B2,B3はブレーキ,C1,C2,C3は入力切り換えクラッチ,Oは出力セルを各々示す.

5. Method of Creating Transmission Schematics

In order to determine whether a schematic based on the lever diagrams extracted in the preceding section will be valid or nor, it is necessary to create a schematic. Previously, this was done with a pencil and paper by making use of intuition backed by experience, so it was invariably a time-consuming process that involved considerable imprecision. To avoid such problems, the authors and others automated this process by developing a method of generating schematics by computer. Basically, this method makes use of the grid expansion procedure developed by Lee⁽⁴⁾ as a way of automatically generating the circuitry of semiconductors and other devices as wiring diagrams. The grid expansion procedure refers to a technique for automatically finding the wiring between two points of a circuit on a cell map based on the Lee algorithm. This method is characterized by being able to find the wiring in every case, provided that it exists, and also by discovering the shortest route between two points.

Consider that we want to wire between the starting point S and the end point E in the cell map shown in Fig. 12. The cells indicated in red are areas where wiring is prohibited. The process is summarized below.

- (1) A label value of zero is given to the starting point S as the origin.
- (2) Distances from S are given as label values in such a way that waves spread out from S at the center (forward progression).
- (3) Upon reaching the end point E, the cells are retraced in the opposite direction such that the label values decrease by one each time (reverse progression). If there are multiple shortest routes, an order of priority is assigned to the different directions.
- (4) Upon reaching the starting point, a wiring network for the shortest distance is determined (shown by the yellow cells in Fig. 12).

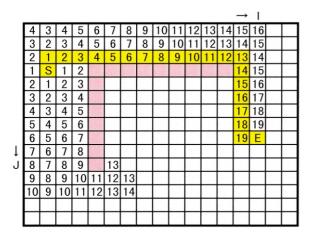


Fig. 12 Lee algorithm

この過程で配線が成功しない場合はレバー図からスケルトンが創製できないと判断し破棄する.スケルトンが成立した場合も,複雑なスケルトンは排除する必要がある.特に,サンギヤの中を貫通する軸の数や,リングギヤの外側を通るドラムの数を実用性の観点から規定値より多い物を破棄する.

6. スケルトンの条件と創製

実際のスケルトンを創製するに際し以下の条件 を考慮した.

- 1)小型・軽量化の観点から副変速機付きタイプも 含めて主変速機の遊星歯車の数を3列までとする.
- 2)ダブルピニオンは1列のみを許容する,ラビニオ 歯車列はシングルピニオン1列,ダブルピニオン 1列から構成されていると考える.
- 3)遊星歯車間を断接するクラッチ,遊星をロックするクラッチの数は各々2個までとする.
- 4)締結要素の合計数を6個までとする.
- 5)副変速機付きタイプは,主変速機の遊星歯車列の個数は2個または3個とし,副変速機は減速タイプと増速タイプとの組み合わせとする.

副変速機を前提にした4速2列遊星については, すでに多くのスケルトンの提案がなされており, それらを参考とした.したがって,3列遊星の4速, 5速をスケルトン創製の対称とした.また,優れた 動力性能,燃費向上を実現させるため,変速比な どに以下の条件でスケルトンを取捨選択した.

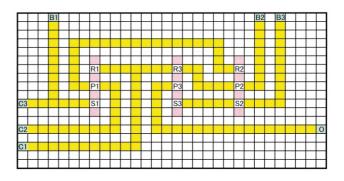


Fig. 13 Connection path diagram

An example of a schematic generated with this method is shown as a connection path diagram in Fig. 13. The notations R1, R2 and R3 denote ring gears, P1, P2 and P3 are carriers, S1, S2 and S3 are sun gears, B1, B2 and B3 are brakes, C1, C2 and C3 are input switching clutches and O is the output cell. If a wiring diagram is not successfully generated in this process, it is concluded that a schematic cannot be generated from the lever diagrams and the diagrams are thrown away. Even if a schematic is valid, complex schematics must be eliminated. For example, schematics in which the number of axes passing through the sun gears or the number of drums passing around the outside of the ring gears exceeds the specified value are thrown away because they are impractical.

6. Schematic Conditions and Creation

The following conditions were taken into account in the process of creating the actual schematic.

- (1) The number of planetary gearsets of the main transmission, including the type with the add-on auxiliary transmission, was limited to three from the standpoint of reducing the size and weight of the unit.
- (2) Only one double-pinion planetary gearset was allowed. The Ravigneaux gear train was assumed to consist of one single-pinion and one double-pinion planetary gearset.
- (3) Two clutches each were allowed for the clutches that connect/disconnect the planetary gearsets and the clutches that lock the planetary gearsets.
- (4) Up to six engagement elements were allowed.
- (5) For the type with an add-on auxiliary transmission, the main transmission would have two or three planetary gearsets and the auxiliary transmission would be a combination of the speed-reducing and speed-increasing types.

Reference was made to the many schematics previously proposed for 4-speed ATs that are composed of two planetary gearsets and assume the addition of an auxiliary transmission. Accordingly, the objective was to create schematics for 4- and 5-speed ATs consisting of three planetary gearsets. Schematics were compiled and selected under the following conditions set for the gear ratios and other aspects in order to achieve a transmission with outstanding power performance and fuel economy.

- 1)1つのオーバードライブ段を有し,4速を直結段とすること.
- 2)ギヤ比のカバー範囲は以下とする.

1速:3.0~4.0 2速:2.0~3.0 3速:1.3~2.0 4速:1.0(直結)

5速:0.5~0.9 後進:2.3~5.0

- 3)メンバの最大回転数は入力回転数の3倍以下.ピニオンの自転回転数は有負荷で3倍以下,無負荷で5倍以下とする.
- 4) 変速比巾(1速/速) はクロスからワイドまで適 用可とする.
- 5)過大な動力循環による伝達効率の低下が無いこ と、特に後進段および1速を除く前進段において). 以上のような条件と仮定を得て得られたスケル トンは多数得られたが,遊星の個数やクラッチの 配置で整理するとTable 1のようにまとめられる. 実際の選択にあたっての検討項目については変速 比, 伝達効率, メンバの回転数, ピニオン自転回 転数,前後進比などをレシオカバレージのクロス 側からワイド側まで評価し, それぞれに重み付け を行い評価した.上記数値以外に他社特許の有無, ワンウエイクラッチ装着による締結要素の増加、 振動騒音への影響も重要である. 最終的には幾つ かの候補について詳細レイアウト図を作成し,ユ ニットの寸法,重量,原価を推定した.以上のプ ロセスを経て最終的に選択されたレバー図をFig. 14, スケルトンをFig. 15に示す.このスケルトンを 選定した理由として
- 1)変速比,段間比,レシオカバレージなどATの基本特性が優れている.
- 2)シンプソン歯車列と同じくアンダードライブに おいてリングギヤ入力であり,小型・軽量化が 達成できる.
- 3)メンバーやピニオンの自転回転数が低い.
- 4)3個を装着しても締結要素の増加が1個で,5速を 3遊星,7締結要素で実現できる.
- 5)他社の知的所有権に抵触しない. などである.

- (1) The transmission would have one overdrive gear and fourth gear would be directly engaged.
- (2) The gear ratio coverage would be as follows:

1st gear: 3.0-4.0 2nd gear: 2.0-3.0 3rd gear: 1.3-2.0

4th gear: 1.0 (directly engaged)

5th gear: 0.5-0.9 Reverse: 2.3-5.0

- (3) The maximum rotational speed of the elements would be three times the input speed at the most. The self-rotational speed of the pinions would be a maximum of three times with a load and five times without a load.
- (4) The range of gear ratios (1st-5th) would be variable from close to wide.
- (5) There should not be any decline in transmission efficiency due to an excessive power environment (especially in forward speeds, excluding 1st gear and reverse).

A large number of schematics was obtained on the basis of these conditions and assumptions. They are summarized in Table 1 in terms of the number of planetary gearsets and the arrangement of clutches. In selecting the actual schematic, evaluations were made of the gear ratios, transmission efficiency, rotational speed of the elements, self-rotational speed of the pinions, forward-reverse ratio and other factors with respect to a range of ratio coverage from close to wide. Each factor was duly weighted and evaluated. Apart from the numerical values mentioned above, other important aspects that were examined included the existence of patents held by other companies, the increase in engagement elements due to the use of one-way clutches and the impact on noise and vibration. In the end, layout diagrams were created for several candidate schematics and estimates were made of the transmission dimensions. weight and cost. The lever diagram and schematic that were ultimately selected as a result of this process are shown in Figs. 14 and 15, respectively. This schematic was selected largely for the following reasons.

- (1) The intrinsic characteristics of the AT in terms of gear ratios, ratios between gears, ratio coverage and other aspects are superior.
- (2) Like the Simpson planetary gearset, input is to the ring gear in underdrive, making it possible to achieve size and weight reductions.
- (3) The self-rotational speed of the elements and pinions is low.
- (4) Even with the use of three one-way clutches, engagement elements only increase by one, allowing five speeds to be achieved with three planetary gearsets and seven engagement elements.
- (5) It does not infringe on the intellectual property rights of other companies.

	Number of	Nui	nber of Clut	Number			
Type	Planetary Gearsets	Input Switch	Internal	Interlock	of Brakes	Examples	
New Ravigneaux	2	3			3	GM 5L40E	
	3	3	0	0	3	ZF 5HP30	
1	3	1	1	0	3	GM Allison	
Integral	3	0	2	1	3	Benz W5A580 JATCO JR507E	
	3	0	1	2	2	Ford Patent ⁵⁾	
	2+1(OD)						
Add on	3+1(OD)	2	0	1	4	Toyota A650E	
Aud Oll	2+1(UD)	2	1	1	3	JATCO JR502E	
	3+1(UD)						

Table 1 Classification and examples of transmission schematics

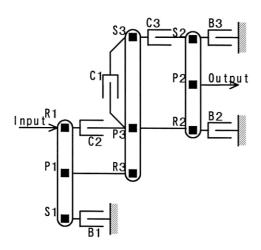


Fig. 14 Lever diagram of the JR507E 5-speed AT

C2 B2 B3 Ratio 1st • 2nd 2. 264 3rd • • \bullet 4th • • • • 5th 0.834 • Rev B2 | R2 R3 R1 P1 P2 Р3 **S**1 \$2 \$3 Input

Fig. 15 Schematic of the JR507E 5-speed AT

7. 結論

- (1)遊星歯車列を複数個使用する際の組み合わせを 分類し、それぞれの分類で新型5速ATの目標性 能を達成する可能性のあるスケルトンを洩れな く抽出できた.
- (2)抽出したスケルトンから得られる情報をもとに, そのポテンシャルを徹底的に比較・検討し,効 果的な絞り込みができた.
- (3)最終的に絞り込んだスケルトンでの開発により 開発目標が達成でき,車両の動力性能および燃 費向上に貢献できた.

7. Conclusion

- (1) The possible combinations of multiple planetary gearsets were categorized and schematics with the potential for achieving the target performance of the new 5-speed AT were extracted for each type without exception.
- (2) Based on the information gained from the extracted schematics, the potential of each was thoroughly compared and examined so as to narrow down the candidates effectively.
- (3) By developing the transmission in line with the schematic that was ultimately selected, the target performance was achieved, enabling the transmission to contribute to improvements in vehicle power performance and fuel economy.

8. おわりに

JR507E型自動変速機は本稿で述べたようなプロセスによるスケルトンの選定により,その高い目標性能を達成することができた.選定に当たりその絞り込み検討に際し的確なアドバイスを頂いた日産自動車(株)パワートレイン開発本部ドライブトレイン開発部関係諸氏に感謝する.JR507E型は21世紀を担うに相応しい自動変速機であると自負しているが,今後更なる性能向上を進めていく.関係諸氏の御協力をお願いしたい.

参考文献

- 1)Benford & Leisung, The Lever Analogy, SAE Paper 810108,1981.
- 2)Craig S. Ross et.al., A Method for Selecting Pararell-Connected, Planetary Gear Train Arrangements for Automatic Transmission, SAE Paper 911941,1991.
- 3)住 泰夫,遊星歯車列の自動検索システムの研究,自動車技術会論文集,27巻,9639283号, 1996年10月.
- 4) Lee C.Y., An Algorithm for Path Connections and Its Applications. IRE Trans. Electron. Compu., Vol.EC-10,pp.346-365,1961
- 5)米国特許第5295924号

8. Concluding Remarks

The schematic of the JR507E 5-speed AT was determined though the process described here, which made it possible to achieve the high performance targets set for this unit. The authors would like to thank the individuals concerned in the Drivetrain Engineering Department of Nissan Motor Co.'s Powertrain Engineering Division for their valuable advice concerning the study for narrowing down the schematic candidates.

We are convinced that the JR507E is a suitable AT for application to 21st century vehicles and plan to seek the cooperation of related parties in making further improvements to its performance in the future.

References

- (1) Benford and Leisung, The Lever Analogy, SAE Paper 810108, 1981.
- (2) Ross, Craig S., A Method for Selecting Parallel-Connected Planetary Gear Train Arrangements for Automatic Transmission, SAE Paper 911941, 1991.
- (3) Sumi, Yasuo, Research on an Automatic Search System for Planetary Gearsets, Transactions of JSAE, Vol. 27, No. 9639283, October 1996 (in Japanese).
- (4) Lee, C. Y., An Algorithm for Path Connections and Its Applications, IRE Trans. Electron. Compu., Vol. EC-10, pp. 346-365, 1961.
- (5) U.S. Patent No. 5295924.

Authors



Tatsuya KATO



Yasuo SUMI

新型5速AT用パワートレイン部品に採用された軽量化技術

Weight Reduction Technologies for Powertrain Parts of a New 5-speed AT

山口 俊男*

杉原 剛史*

稲葉 哲也*

白戸 宏一郎*

Toshio YAMAGUCHI

Tsuyoshi SUGIHARA

Tetsuya INABA

Kouichirou SHIRATO

抄 録 JR507E型5速自動変速機は21世紀を担う次世代ATに相応しいトランスミッションとして開発した. トップクラスの小型・軽量化を達成出来た.

本稿では,特にパワートレイン部品で採用された軽 量化技術について紹介する. **Summary** The JR507E 5-speed automatic transmission has been developed as an all-new, next-generation gearbox. We accomplished this by making the JR507E one of the smallest and lightest automatic transmissions in its class. This paper describes the weight reduction technologies adopted for the powertrain parts.

1.はじめに

JR507E型自動変速機は,従来型4速自動変速機に比べ,トルク容量を約20%増大しながらも,5速にして約23%の軽量化を実現した.これにより,ユニットサイズも従来型4速AT並みに抑えてトップクラスの小型・軽量のユニットを達成した.パワートレイン部品の開発に際して,アルミ材の多用化,部品の高機能化・一体化,FEMの活用・負荷条件見直し等による最適強度解析等を行なったので以下に紹介する.

2.基本構成

JR507E型自動変速機は小型・軽量化に最も適していると考えられるスケルトンを選択している(Fig. 1,2)

3組の遊星歯車と7ヶのクラッチ・ブレーキ装置と3つのワンウェイクラッチを効率よく配置することにより小型化と,変速性能との両立が図られている.

1. Introduction

The JR507E AT increases the torque capacity by approximately 20% over the previous 4-speed AT and is roughly 23% lighter in weight despite being a 5-speed gearbox. It also retains the same unit size as the previous 4-speed AT to achieve one of the smallest and lightest designs in its class. In developing the powertrain parts, extensive use was made of aluminum, parts were integrated and their functionality was enhanced, and optimum strength analyses were conducted using finite element analysis (FEA) models and by reviewing the load conditions. These and other weight reduction technologies are described here.

2. Basic Structure

The basic structure adopted for the JR507E AT is considered to be optimally suited for reducing the size and weight of the unit (Figs. 1 and 2). Three planetary gearsets, seven clutches and brakes and three one-way clutches are efficiently arranged to achieve a more compact size combined with superior shifting performance.

^{*} 第三商品開発グループ Product Development Group No. 3

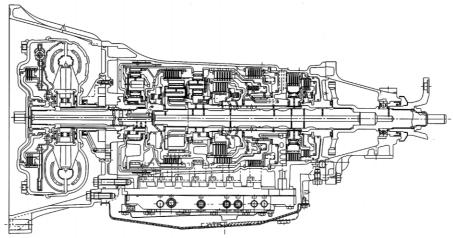
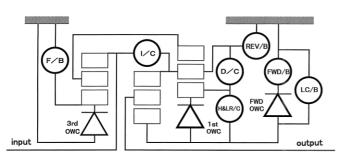


Fig. 1 Main cross-sectional view



I/C: Input clutch LC/B: Low coast brake H&LR/C: High & low reverse clutch Fwd/B: Forward brake D/C: Direct clutch 1st OWC: 1st one-way clutch

REV/B: Reverse brake Fwd OWC: Forward one-way clutch F/B: Front brake 3rd OWC: 3rd one-way clutch

- 1	Shift sitions	I/C	H&LR/ C	D/C	Rev/B	F/B	LC/B	Fwd/B	1st OWC	Fwd OWC	3rd OWC	Remarks
	P		Δ			Δ						Park
	R		0		0	0			0		0	Reverse
	N		Δ			Δ						Neutral
	1st		Δ			Δ	$\triangle \diamondsuit$	0	0	0	0	
	2nd			0		Δ	\Diamond	0		0	0	Automatic Shifting
D	3rd		0	0		0		Δ	\Diamond		0	1←→2←→3
	4th	0	0	0				Δ	♦			<i>←</i> →4 <i>←</i> →5
	5th	0	0			0		Δ	\Q		♦	

- 0000 Operates during acceleration.
 Operates while vehicle coasting.
 Operates only when Manual mode is selected.
- Φ Operates but does not affect power transmission
 Δ Operates in appropriate vehicle speed range.
 Remark: Manual mode derivative is available.

Fig. 2 Gear train schematic of JR507E

3. 軽量化技術開発

3.1. 部品点数の削減

新スケルトンの採用,最適配置により,従来の5 速AT に対して部品点数を17%削減し,従来の4速 AT並に抑えることができた . (Fig. 3)

3. Development of Weight Reduction Technologies

3.1. Reduction of part count

The newly adopted basic structure and optimum layout reduce the part count by 17% compared with an existing 5-speed AT and keep the number equal to that of previous 4-speed ATs (Fig. 3).

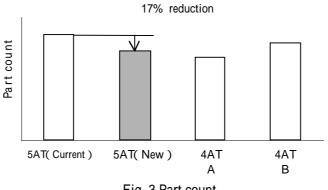


Fig. 3 Part count

3.2. クラッチドラムのアルミ化

D/C(ダイレクトクラッチ),H/C(ハイ&ローリバースクラッチ)ドラムに高強度アルミ材を採用した(Fig.4)また,徹底的な軽量化を図るため,強度解析を行ない数多くの油穴を設けた(Fig.5)これにより,従来に対し45%の軽量化を行なった.

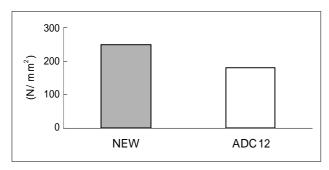


Fig. 4 Material strength

3.3. 遊星キャリアのアルミ化

フロントとリアの遊星キャリアにもクラッチドラム同様に高強度アルミ材を採用した.特に耐摩耗性に優れている材料を選定した(Fig. 6)

更にピニオンニードルへの潤滑量を確保するためのオイルキャッチをキャリア本体と一体化した結果,高剛性化も可能となった(Fig.7)

これにより、従来に対し55%の軽量化を行った.

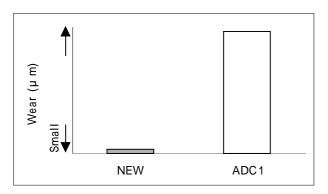
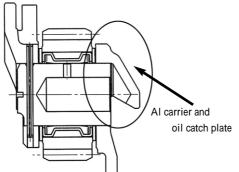


Fig. 6 Abrasion resistance



3.2. Aluminum clutch drums

A high-strength aluminum alloy was adopted for the drum of the direct clutch and that of the high and low reverse clutch (Fig. 4). Strength analyses were also conducted and many oil holes were provided in a thorough-going effort to reduce the drum weight (Fig. 5). As a result, the clutch drums are 45% lighter than previous ones.

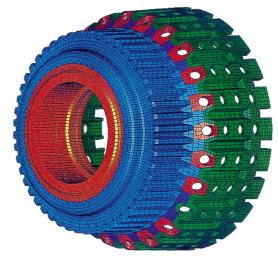


Fig. 5 FEM model of clutch drum

3.3. Aluminum planetary gear carriers

Similar to the clutch drums, a high-strength aluminum alloy was also adopted for the front and rear planetary gear carriers. A material with outstanding abrasion resistance in particular was selected (Fig. 6).

In addition, the oil catch plate for supplying sufficient lubricating oil to the pinion needles was integrated with the carrier proper, making it possible to attain higher stiffness as well (Fig. 7).

As a result of these measures, the weight was reduced by 55% compared with that of previous planetary gear carriers.

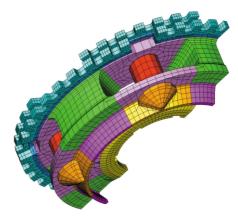


Fig. 7 FEM model of planetary carrier

3.4. ドラムサポートの高機能化

ドラムサポートにD/C(ダイレクトクラッチドラム)の回転支持,3つのブレーキ(REV/B,FWD/B,LC/B)の前後方向油圧支持,油圧回路の分岐機能を集約させ,ケース内にテーパースナップリング(TAPER SNAP)で固定する方式とした(Fig. 8)

FWD/B多板プレート部のスナップリングを廃止することにより全長短縮ができ,更に高強度アルミ材の採用により約2500gの小型軽量化が可能となった.

FWD/Bの油圧力を受けた時の倒れを,上下均等で最小とするために,最適形状設計を行なった.(Fig. 9)

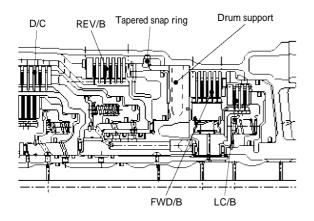


Fig. 8 Drum support

3.4. Enhanced functionality of drum support

The drum support now concentrates the functions of supporting the rotation of the direct clutch drum, supporting the longitudinal hydraulic circuit of three brakes (reverse brake, forward brake and low coast brake) and branching the hydraulic circuit. It is fixed in place in the case by a tapered snap ring (Fig. 8).

The overall length of the support was shortened by discontinuing the snap ring of the multiplate part of the forward brake. Moreover, the adoption of a high-strength aluminum alloy achieved a weight reduction of approximately 2,500g.

The drum support was designed with the optimum shape to equalize and minimize the upper and lower displacement of the forward brake when hydraulic pressure is applied (Fig. 9).

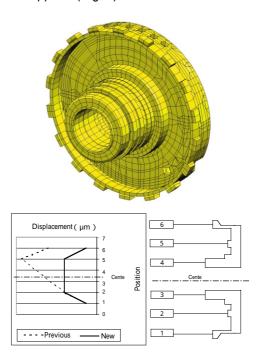


Fig. 9 Optimum design of drum support

3.5. ワンウェイクラッチ(O.W.C) の小型化

1st, Fwd, 3rdの3つのワンウェイクラッチは,実車走行モードによる負荷頻度解析を行い設計した結果,従来に対して小型軽量化できた(Fig. 10)

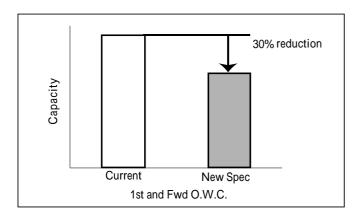
更に,1st,3rdワンウェイクラッチが各々フロント・リヤ遊星キャリヤ内の同軸上に格納可能となったことで,ユニット全長も短縮できた.(Fig.11)これらにより,約1500gの小型軽量化を行った.

3.5. More compact one-way clutches

A load frequency analysis was conducted for the first, forward and third one-way clutches under real-world driving modes. The results were incorporated in the design of the three clutches to reduce their size and weight compared with previous one-way clutches (Fig. 10).

This also made it possible to position the first and third one-way clutches on the same longitudinal axis in the front and rear planetary gearsets, respectively, thereby shortening the overall unit length (Fig. 11).

As a result, a weight reduction of approximately 1,500g was achieved.



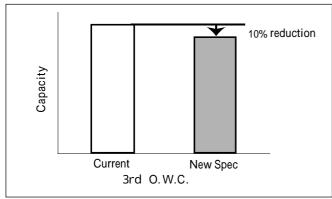


Fig. 10 O.W.C. capacity

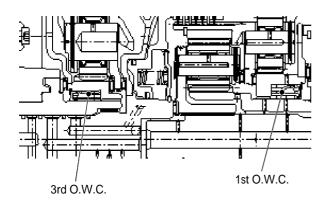


Fig. 11 One-way clutches

3.6. 部品の一体化

- 1)インプットクラッチドラムのフローフォミング化 従来設計では2つのプレス部品を溶接等で接合し ていたが、本開発では裂開工程を含むフローフォー ミング工法を採用することにより、部品の一体 化・肉厚等の最適形状設計を行った(Fig. 12) これにより約150gの軽量化を行なった。
- 2)アウトプットシャフトとパークギヤの一体化 精密冷鍛工法を採用することにより、アウトプットシャッフトとパークギヤを一体化成形し、約 50gの軽量化を行った(Fig. 13)

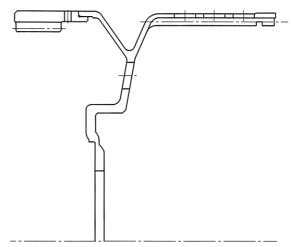


Fig. 12 Flow formed input clutch drum

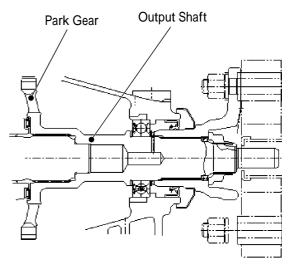


Fig. 13 Integrated output shaft and park gear

3.6. Parts integration

1) Flow forming of input clutch drum

With the previous design, two stamped parts were welded together. However, a flow forming process, including the opening operation, was adopted for the newly developed AT. This made it possible to achieve the optimum drum shape, including the integration of parts and a reduction of the part wall thickness (Fig. 12).

This resulted in a weight reduction of approximately 150g.

2) Integration of output shaft and park gear

The output shaft and park gear were formed as an integrated part using a precision cold forming technique, which achieved a weight reduction of approximately 50g (Fig. 13).

3.7. その他シャフトの小型化

パワートレイン部の中心となるインタミディエトシャフトについても,設計手法を見直した結果,従来に対して小型軽量化できた.

4. 効果

パワートレイン部品群はATユニット内でも大きな重量比(40%)を占めている.(Fig. 14)

以上の軽量化技術開発により,パワートレイン 部品として従来比約30%の軽量化が実現できた. (Fig. 15)

パワートレイン部品軽量化の中の内訳は,クラッチドラム,遊星キャリアのアルミ化が46%,ドラムサポートの高機能化が20%,その他34%(計100%)となった(Fig. 16)

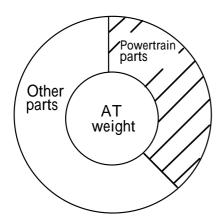


Fig. 14 Weight of powertrain parts

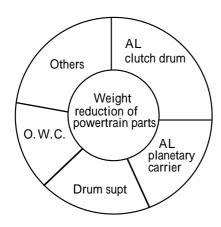


Fig. 16 Breakdown of weight reduction

3.7. Smaller intermediate shaft

The method of designing the intermediate shaft at the heart of the powertrain was also improved to achieve a smaller and lighter shaft compared with previous ones.

4. Weight Reduction Effect

Powertrain parts account for a large portion (40%) of the total AT weight (Fig. 14). As a result of developing the weight reduction technologies described here, the combined weight of the powertrain parts was reduced by approximately 30% compared with existing 4-speed ATs (Fig. 15).

A breakdown of the total weight reduction achieved for the powertrain parts shows that the application of aluminum to the clutch drums and planetary gear carriers accounted for 46%, the enhanced functionality of the drum support represented 20% and other measures contributed 34% (Fig. 16).

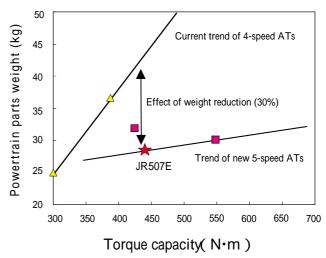


Fig. 15 Weight of powertrain parts

5.あとがき

以上の要素技術開発により当初の狙いであるトップクラスの小型・軽量化ユニット開発を実現できた. 日産自動車(株)パワートレイン開発本部ドライブトレイン開発部の皆様をはじめ様々な場面で適切なバックアップをいただいた社内関係各部署ならびに関連メーカの方々の御協力に深く感謝致します.

5. Closing Note

The development of the above-mentioned key technologies accomplished the initial objective of developing a new AT that ranks among the smallest and lightest in its class.

The authors would first like to thank NISSAN MOTOR CO., LTD. Powetrain Engineering Division, Drivetrain Engineering Department, as well as the various departments concerned within the company and also the suppliers involved for their invaluable cooperation and support in many different areas of this project.

Authors







Tsuyoshi SUGIHARA



Tetsuya INABA



Kouichirou SHIRATO

大容量小型トルクコンバータの開発

Development of a Compact Torque Converter with High Torque Capacity

岡田 克彦*

牧野 哲也*

石川 昌範*

山本 毅*

Katsuhiko OKADA

Tetsuya MAKINO

Masanori ISHIKAWA

Takeshi YAMAMOTO

抄 録 新開発JR507E型5速自動変速機用トルクコンバータには,燃費改善と軽量化を目的として,トーラス形状を最適化してトルクコンバータ外径を10%縮小すると共に,応答性と耐久性を改良した多板クラッチ式ロックアップを採用した.

本稿では,これらの達成手法について解説する.

Summary Our new JR507E automatic transmission adopts a new torque converter with three downsized elements and a multi-facing lock-up clutch for improved fuel economy and a lighter weight. This paper describes the new torque converter.

1.はじめに

トルクコンバータ(以下TCとする)は,エンジンのトルク変動を減衰させ,かつ入出力回転数の違いに応じて外部からの制御無しにトルクを可変増幅する機能を持った流体継手である.

TCは,自動変速機に要求される信頼性,応答性,滑らかさ,駆動力特性など総合的にバランスの良い性能を備えた発進要素であり,自動変速機のほとんどに採用されている.

しかし,燃費や重量の点では改善要求が強く, 小型化やロックアップの高機能化のニーズは高い.

本稿では,上記の要求を背景に開発された JR507E型5速自動変速機用TCについて紹介する.

2. 流体要素の開発

2.1. 軽量化へのトライアル

流体継手として究極的に軽量化しようとすれば,フルードカップリング(以下FCとする)となるが,FCではトルク増幅作用が無く自動車用発進要素としては殆ど採用されていない.

TCとFCの中間的な立場にあるのが,コアレストルクコンバータである.コアレスTCは文字通り流路内周壁を構成するコアを持たないことを特徴とするTCである.従来,コアレスTCはストールトルク比や高速度比域での効率が低く,FCの派生と考えられていた.

A torque converter is a type of hydrodynamic coupling that functions to attenuate fluctuations in engine torque and also to amplify torque in a variable manner according to differences in input / output speeds, without the application of any external control. Nearly all automatic transmissions today incorporate a torque converter as a start-off element that provides a comprehensive balance of the performance parameters required of ATs. This includes reliability, responsiveness, smoothness and the desired drive torque characteristics. There are strong demands, however, for further improvements with respect to fuel economy and weight. In this regard, there are strong needs for reductions in size and for higher lock-up clutch functionality.

This paper describes the torque converter developed for the JR507E 5-speed automatic transmission against the backdrop of these requirements.

2. Development of Hydrodynamic Elements

2.1. Weight reduction challenge

Reducing the weight of a hydrodynamic coupling to its ultimate level would result in a fluid coupling. Fluid couplings have almost never been used as the start-off element of automobiles because they have no torque amplification effect.

Functional Component Development Group

^{1.} Introduction

^{*}機能部品開発グループ

しかし、最近ではストールトルク比や効率がコア付きTCとほぼ同等のレベルを維持し、伝達トルク容量は最大で約2倍という性能を持つコアレスTCが報告されている.¹⁾この場合、伝達トルク容量は径の5乗に比例するので、外径を約13%も縮小することができることになる.さらに、曲面翼タイプによる効率向上も報告されている.²⁾

今回は、コアレスTCの考え方を参考に小形コアで開発を始めることとした、従来のTCとコアレスTCの断面図を丸型TCにて比較してみる(Fig. 1).

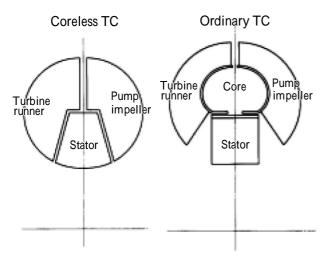


Fig. 1 Cross sections of a coreless TC and an ordinary TC

2.2. 小形コアトルクコンバータへのアプローチ 開発コンセプトである大容量小型TCを実現させるにあたり、まずコアレスTCについて考えた.しかし、コアレスTCはその名が表す通りコアがないために、生産性が従来と大きく変わるという問題が発生する.そこで、従来と同じ工法で対応できると共に、性能に極力影響を及ばさないように、流れを大きく邪魔しない程度に小さなコアを付けることを検討した.

小さなコアを設定するにあたり、市販のソフト(STAR-CD)を用い三次元粘性流れ解析を行ない、シェル及びコアを含めたトーラス形状の最適化を図った.その一例を以下に紹介する.コア形状を変更した場合のタービンランナ入口から出口までの断面平均相対流速分布をFig. 2に示す.コア形状変更前がA、変更後がBで、グラフから中央部の相対流速が変更後は滑らかになり流速が増加していることが分かる.同様にロータルピ変化をFig.3に示す.ロータルピとは静圧と子午面速度の総エネルギである.コア形状変更後のロータルピ変化を示す曲線の勾配が緩くなり、コア形状改善により損失発生を抑え、効率が向上した.

The coreless torque converter occupies an intermediate position between an ordinary torque converter and a fluid coupling. As its name implies, a coreless torque converter is characterized by the absence of a core that normally forms the flow passage in an ordinary torque converter. The coreless torque converter, with a low stall torque ratio and low efficiency in the high-speed ratio region, has traditionally been regarded as being derived from the fluid coupling.

A coreless torque converter⁽¹⁾ has been reported, however, that maintains nearly the same stall torque ratio and efficiency as a cored torque converter while achieving maximum torque capacity that is approximately double. In this case, since torque capacity is proportional to the 5th power of the torque converter diameter, the outer diameter of the unit can be reduced by approximately 13%. Moreover, it has been reported that a torque converter with curved blades achieves higher efficiency.⁽²⁾

It was decided to develop a small-core torque converter for the JR507E AT in reference to the coreless torque converter concept (Fig. 1).

2.2. Approach to developing a small-core torque converter

In order to achieve the development concept of a compact torque converter with high torque capacity, we first considered the coreless torque converter. However, one problem that occurred with the coreless type was that, owing to the absence of a core, productivity varied significantly compared with a conventional torque converter. Therefore, the idea of adding a small core was investigated as a way of achieving an accommodation with the traditional engineering method. In addition, the size of the core would be small enough to minimize any impact on performance and so as not to obstruct internal flow appreciably.

In designing a small core, a 3-D viscous flow analysis was conducted using commercially available software (STAR-CD) to optimize the torus geometry, including the shell and core. One example is described here.

Figure 2 shows the average relative velocity distribution in a cross section of the flow passage from the inlet to the exit of a turbine runner, when the core geometry was changed. The letters A and B denote the relative velocity before and after the core geometry change, respectively. It is seen that the average relative

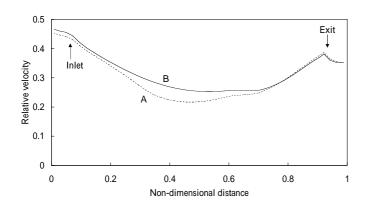


Fig. 2 Average relative velocity from inlet to exit of a turbine runner

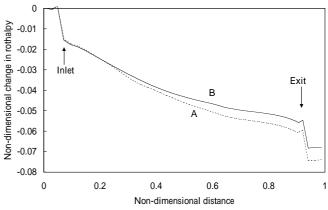


Fig. 3 Change in rothalpy from inlet to exit of a turbine runner

2.3. ブレード形状最適化

流体性能の高効率化による燃費向上と同時に,車両としての動力性能向上も要求されている.動力性能向上には,エンジン特性と流体性能とのマッチングが非常に重要であり,目標とした流体性能をどれだけ達成できるかが課題となる.また,将来エンジンの特性を想定した流体性能バリエーションも考慮し,的確な翼形状・翼角設定が必要となる.

2.3.1. ポンプインペラ,タービンランナブレード 以下の独立するパラメータを最適化し,最後に ステータと組み合わせた場合のTC性能を検証した.

- ・出入り口翼角度
- ・翼負荷分布
- バイアス角

さらに,TC系列化を考慮した出口角とした.

2.3.2. ステータブレード

ステータは、入力トルク容量係数の特性をコントロールすることができる重要な要素である.まず、燃費性能及び動力性能を両立させる最適な入力トルク容量係数の特性カーブを設定する.次に、目標とする入力トルク容量係数の特性になるようにステータ翼形状を設定する.

2.3.3. 流体性能

以上より得られた流体性能を従来のTCの性能と 共にFig. 4に示す. velocity increases smoothly from the center of the graph after the geometry change.

Similarly, the change in rothalpy is shown in Fig. 3. Rothalpy refers to the total energy of the static pressure and meridional velocity. The curve for the change in rothalpy shows a more gentle slope after the core geometry was changed, indicating that the improved core geometry enhanced efficiency by suppressing loss.

2.3. Optimization of blade geometry

Along with improving fuel economy by attaining higher hydrodynamic efficiency, there is a simultaneous demand for enhancement of the power performance of vehicles. To improve power performance, it is essential to have a good match between the engine's characteristics and hydrodynamic performance. A key issue is the extent to which the targeted hydrodynamic performance can be achieved. It is also necessary to set the blade geometry and angle appropriately, taking into account hydrodynamic performance variations that project the characteristics of future engines.

2.3.1. Pump impeller and turbine runner blade

The following independent parameters were optimized and then combined with the stator to validate the torque converter as the final step.

- · Inlet/exit blade angles
- · Blade load distribution
- · Bias angle

In addition, the exit angle was selected in consideration of the development of a torque converter series.

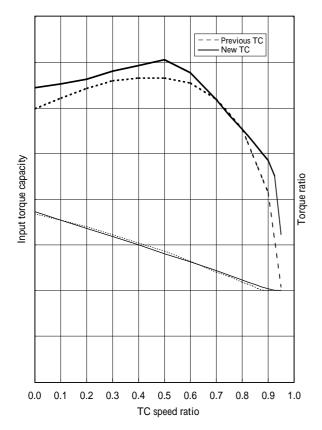


Fig. 4 Performance of previous and new TCs

従来のTCは呼び径272に対し,今回のTCは呼び径が260である.呼び径が約5%小さいにも関わらず従来以上の性能を達成していることが分かる.

3. ロックアップクラッチの開発

3.1. 構造の選定

従来のロックアップ(以下LUとする)クラッチは単板タイプである.今回は,以下の理由からLUクラッチを多板式LU機構とした.

- ・径を大きくすることなくLU容量が確保できる
- ・摩擦材外径すなわちピストン外径を小さくで きる
- ・摩擦材面で油密を保つ必要が無く,摩擦材面 の冷却が可能となり摩擦材の長寿命か出来る

多板LUの構造としてTable 1の候補を考えた.
Table 1より,ドライブ及びコースティングにおけるLU作動応答性及び摩擦材の引きずり性の点で有利なLU油圧独立制御室構造のピストン前押しタイプとした.

2.3.2. Stator blade geometry

The stator is a key element that is capable of controlling the characteristics of the input torque capacity coefficient. To begin with, the input torque capacity coefficient was designed with a characteristic curve that met the requirements for both fuel economy and power performance. The stator blade geometry was then designed so as to obtain the target characteristics for the input torque capacity coefficient.

2.3.3. Hydrodynamic performance

The hydrodynamic performance thus obtained is compared with that of a conventional torque converter in Fig. 4. The previous torque converter has a nominal diameter of 272 mm while that of the new torque converter is 260 mm. Even though its nominal diameter is approximately 5% smaller, the new torque converter achieves a higher level of performance than the previous unit.

3. Development of Lock-up Clutch

3.1. Selection of clutch structure

The previous lock-up clutch was the single-facing type. It was decided to develop a multi-facing lock-up clutch for the following reasons.

- The desired lock-up clutch capacity can be secured without increasing the piston diameter.
- The outer diameter of the friction material, i.e., the piston outer diameter, can be reduced.
- The friction material surface can be cooled without any need to maintain rigorous oil sealing at the surface, thereby extending the material's service life.

Table 1 shows the candidates considered for the structure of the multi-facing lock-up clutch.

Based on the results in the table, it was decided to select the front-charged piston type constructed with an independent cavity for controlling the lock-up clutch pressure. This type is advantageous with respect to the response and drag torque of the lock-up clutch under both driving and coasting conditions.

	Oil Thro	ugh Type	Independent Cavity Type		
	Front Charged Piston Type	Back Charged Piston Type	Front Charged Piston Type	Back Charged Piston Type	
Torque Converter Structure	O(a little complex)	O(a little complex)	O(a little complex)	Δ(Complex)	
Oil Path Structure	O(2 way or 3 way)	O(2 way or 3 way)	△(3 way required)	△(3 way required)	
Performance of Lock-up Clutch	× (Driving response)	× (Coasting response)	0	Δ (Drag torque)	
Durability of Facing	Δ	Δ	0	0	
Judgement			⊚(Usable)		

Table 1 Merits and demerits of various lock-up clutch structures

3.2. 摩擦材径

450Nm適用が可能なこと,完全LU時の摩擦材面圧が一定の値に入ること,及びスリップLU時の摩擦材滑り速度を小さく抑えることを考慮して,摩擦材径及び枚数を決定した.Fig.5に上記の関係をグラフ化する.

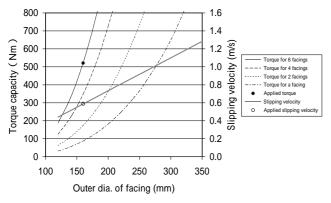


Fig. 5 Relation between lock-up clutch capacity, slipping velocity and facing outer diameter

3.2. Friction facing diameter

The friction facing diameter and number were selected in consideration of achieving a torque capacity of 450 N-m, attaining a constant friction material contact pressure under full lock-up and keeping the slipping velocity of the friction material low during slip lock-up clutch operation. The torque capacity and slipping velocity are shown in Fig. 5 as a function of the facing outer diameter.

3.3. ロックアップ性能

ドライブ,コーストとも,LUの作動応答性を改善すると共に引きずりトルクを減少させた.

LU油圧独立制御室構造とすることにより、全速度比域に渡って安定したLU作動応答性を確保することができた。また、ピストン前押しタイプにすると共にピストン外径を小径化することにより引きずりトルクが低減できた。Fig. 6に従来TCと比較したLUの作動応答性を示す。

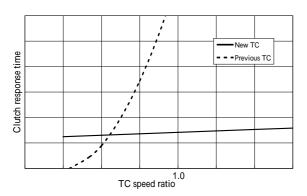


Fig. 6 Lock-up clutch response

3.4. スリップロックアップ

スリップLUを開発するにあたり、摩擦材の強度を確保すると共に摩擦面温度を抑える多板式LU機構とLU油圧独立制御室構造を採用することにより、従来よりも積極的にスリップLUさせることができるようにした。

摩擦材と自動変速機油(以下ATF)を新開発することにより,スリップによる摩擦材特性の劣化を抑えることができた.また,多板LUの摩擦材まわりの部品設計を最適化することによりATFの流れ方をコントロールし,摩擦材を積極的に冷却できる構造とした.Fig. 7に,スリップ中の摩擦面温度を従来型単板TCと比較したグラフを示す.スリップ開始直後は周辺部品の熱容量の関係から多板式LU機構の方が摩擦面温度上昇が早いが,時間が経つにつれ冷却効果が出て摩擦面温度が下がっていることが確認できる.

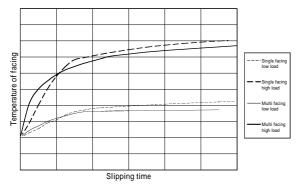


Fig. 7 Relation between slipping time and facing temperature

3.3. Lock-up dutch performance

The response of the lock-up clutch under both driving and coasting conditions has been improved and drag torque has also been reduced. As a result of adopting an independent cavity for controlling the lock-up clutch pressure, stable lock-up clutch response has been achieved in all speed ratio ranges. In addition, drag torque has been reduced by adopting the front-charged piston type and making the outer diameter of the piston smaller. Figure 6 compares of the lock-up clutch response of the new and previous torque converters as a function of the speed ratio.

3.4. Slip lock-up operation

In developing the slip lock-up clutch, it was decided to adopt a clutch constructed with multi-facings and an independent cavity for controlling the lock-up clutch pressure. This clutch design was selected to ensure sufficient friction material strength and to hold down the rise in the surface temperature of friction materials. As a result, the new torque converter allows more aggressive use of slip lock-up operation than before.

New friction materials and automatic transmission fluid (ATF) were developed to reduce degradation of friction material properties caused by slipping. In addition, part designs around the friction materials of the multi-facing lock-up clutch were optimized to achieve a construction for controlling ATF flow characteristics and thereby cool the friction materials more efficiently. The graph in Fig. 7 compares the facing surface temperature during slipping for the previous single-facing lock-up clutch and the new multi-facing clutch. Following the onset of slipping, the friction material surface temperature of the multi-facing lock-up clutch rises more quickly on account of the heat capacities of surrounding parts. However, the cooling effect appears as time passes and it is seen that the friction material surface temperature then falls below that of the previous lock-up clutch.

4. トルクコンバータの開発

以上より、新流体要素と小径多板LUを組み合わせた大容量小型TCを開発した、従来のJR404E用TCに対しTC最外径を約10%低減することができた(Fig. 8)、従来のベンチマークに対して優位な差を持つ小型TCであることがわかる、Fig. 9に適用エンジントルクに対するTC最外径を示す、

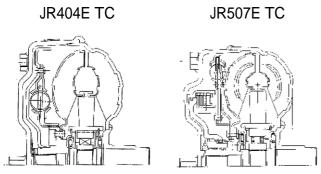


Fig. 8 Cross sections of previous and new TCs

5.おわりに

TCは,自動変速機において車両の動力性能や燃費性能に大きく寄与する機能部品であり,スペースや重量の占める割合も大きく,更なる高性能化や小型化が要求されている.今回の開発は,性能向上と共に径方向の小型化に重きを置いたが,今後は軸方向の小型化の開発にも積極的に取り組んでいきたい.

最後に,本TC開発にあたりご協力いただいた日 産自動車(株)パワートレイン開発本部ドライブト レイン開発部の皆様をはじめ、関係者の方々に深 く感謝の意を表します.

4. Development of Torque Converter

A compact torque converter with high torque capacity was then developed by combining the new hydrodynamic elements and the small-diameter multifacing lock-up clutch described in the preceding sections. Compared with the previous torque converter for the JR404E AT, the outermost diameter of the new torque converter has been reduced by approximately 10% (Fig. 8). This gives the new compact torque converter a significant size advantage over the previous benchmark. Figure 9 shows the maximum outer diameter of the torque converter as a function of the maximum engine torque that can be accommodated.

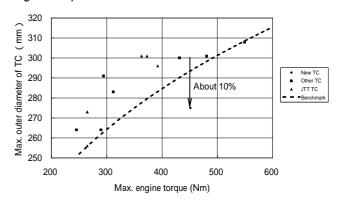


Fig. 9 Relation between max. engine torque and TC outer diameter

5. Conclusion

A torque converter is a functional component that contributes significantly to the power performance and fuel economy of a vehicle. Because it accounts for a relatively large proportion of the space and weight, there are needs for further performance improvements and size reductions. In developing this new torque converter, emphasis was placed on enhancing performance and reducing the diameter of the unit. In future development work, vigorous efforts will be made to reduce the overall torque converter length as well.

Finally, the authors would first like to thank NISSAN MOTOR CO., LTD. Powetrain Engineering Division, Drivetrain Engineering Department, as well as various individuals for their valuable cooperation with this development project.

参考文献

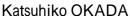
- 1) Z.Szydelski, et al.: New Type Three Element Torque Converter and Its Application to Mobile Equipment, SAE Paper, 861213 (1986).
- 2) 江尻他: コアレストルクコンバータの内部流れ 解析,日本機械学会講演論文集,No.98-15, pp195-196 (1998).

References

- (1) Z. Szydelski, et al., "New Type Three Element Torque Converter and Its Application to Mobile Equipment," SAE Paper 861213 (1986).
- (2) E. Ejiri, et al., "Analysis of Internal Flow in a Core-less Torque Converter," Transactions of Japan Society of Mechanical Engineers, No. 98-15, pp. 195-196, (1998) (in Japanese).

Authors







Tetsuya MAKINO



Masanori ISHIKAWA



Takeshi YAMAMOTO

MATLABを用いた5速AT変速制御開発

Development of Shift Control for a 5-speed AT Using MATLAB

今村 達也*

理* 佐藤

佐野 一仁**

冨岡 一雄**

Tatsuya IMAMURA

Osamu SATO

Kazuhito SANO

Kazuo TOMIOKA

抄 録 有段式自動変速機(以下ATとする)は,燃 費性能,動力性能,変速性能の向上のため,現在主流 の4速ATから多段化する傾向にある.多段ATは構造 が複雑であり,そのための変速制御も複雑化がさけら れない、このため、一層の開発効率向上が求められて いる.本稿では,当社JR507E型5速ATの開発効率向上 に大きく貢献したMATLABによる変速性能シミュレ ーションモデルの原理,特徴,計算例を紹介する.

Summary Conventional 4-speed ATs are being replaced by ATs with more speed ranges in order to improve fuel efficiency, acceleration and shift quality. Since ATs with a greater number of speed ranges have a more complex structure, shift control becomes more complicated, necessitating further improvement of development work efficiency. This paper describes the principle and features of a shift shock simulation model based on MATLAB, and the results obtained with this tool, which contributed greatly to improving development work efficiency for our JR507E 5-speed AT.

1.はじめに

近年,自動変速機の搭載率拡大・高性能化に伴 い,自動変速機の開発業務が多様化・高度化し, その業務量も増加の一途をたどっている.こうし た中,設計能率及び設計精度を向上し,開発業務 を大幅に効率化することが要求されている.ATは 「トルク伝達機構が,変速の種類毎に大きく異なる」 という特徴を持つ.このため従来,変速ショック シミュレーションを開発する場合,パワートレー ンモデル部のプログラム(場合分け)作成に,多 大な工数を要した. 今回の変速ショックシミュレ ーション開発では,この場合分けが不要な手法 「変速の種類に依存しない仮想パワートレーンモデ ル」を採用した.

また、モデルの作成などのプログラミング作業 が大幅に効率化できるThe MathWorks, Inc.のCAEソ フト『MATLAB』を用いた.

FR5速ATを例に,今回開発した,変速ショックシ ミュレーションの概要について,以下に紹介する.

1. Introduction

The work of developing automatic transmissions (ATs) has become more diversified and sophisticated in recent years, as a result of the increased installation rate of these gearboxes and their higher performance levels. The amount of development work involved is also steadily increasing. Against this backdrop, there is a need for substantial improvement of development work efficiency by enhancing design work efficiency and accuracy. One characteristic of an AT is that the torque transmission mechanism differs greatly according to each type of shift. Consequently, in developing a shift shock simulation model, a great deal of time and effort has previously been required to create the control program for the powertrain model (i.e., switching between programs during simulations). In developing the shift shock simulation model described here, a virtual powertrain model that does not depend on the type of shift was adopted, thereby eliminating the need for switching between programs. The programming work, including model creation, was done with MATLAB, a CAE tool of The MathWorks, Inc. that greatly boosts development work efficiency.

This paper gives an overview of the newly developed shift shock simulation model, using a 5-speed AT for a front-engine rear-drive car as an example.

機能部品開発グループ

Functional Component Development Group

^{**}実験部

Experiment Department

2. 開発の狙い

下記を狙いとした.

場合分けが不要な手法を用いることで,複雑な多段ATのモデル構造を単純化する.

『MATLAB』によりモデルをビジュアル化し、 誰でも容易に理解でき標準化できる.

2.1. 従来の方法

従来,新スケルトンの変速シミュレーションを 開発する際,パワートレーンの運動方程式を解く 為の,条件の設定に多大な工数が必要とされてい た.これは,未知数の数より方程式の数が少ない のを補うため,変速種毎に場合分けを行いクラッ チの締結状態,各回転部位の回転関係を用いて未 知数を減らす方法を用いていたからである.また, プログラミング自体も,Fortran等の言語を用いて計 算を行っていたため,基礎的な関数も開発者がプログラム中に作成する必要があった.したがって, プログラムが複雑になり作成者以外には理解が困 難となり,標準化のためには,詳細なマニュアル の整備が必要だった.

2.2. 今回の開発手法の特徴

今回,シミュレーションを開発するにあたり, 先行開発部で開発した,『完全締結時にクラッチが 常時微少に滑っているモデル』の手法を整理,適 用することで,前述の場合分けを不要とした.ま た,プログラミング自体にも,汎用数値解析関数 を多数持つ『MATLAB』を用いることで,開発工 数の大幅な低減を実現した.

3. モデル化の原理

3.1.パワートレーンモデルの数式化

各回転部位について運動方程式をたて,これら を行列で表すと以下のようになる.

2. Development Aims

The aims of this project were:

To simplify the complex model structure of a 5-speed AT by using a method that does not require any switching between programs during simulations.

To visualize the model using MATLAB and standardize it so that anyone can easily understand it.

2.1. Conventional method

Previously, when a shift shock simulation model was developed for an all-new transmission, much time and effort was needed to set the conditions for solving the equations of motion of the powertrain. That was because a method was used to reduce the number of unknowns in order to compensate for the smaller number of equations. That involved switching between programs depending on the type of shift involved, using the engagement states of the clutches and the rotational relationships of the rotating parts. In addition, the programming itself was done using Fortran or a similar language to perform the calculations, making it necessary for the developer to create the fundamental functions in the course of writing the control program. As a result, the program became rather complex and was difficult to understand for anyone other than the developer. Consequently, it was necessary to create a detailed manual in order to standardize control programs.

2.2. Features of this development method

In the process of developing the shift shock simulation model, a method of "modeling the constant slight slipping of the clutches when fully engaged" was modified and adopted. That method was developed by the Advance Development Group, and it eliminates the need for switching between programs. Additionally, the programming itself was done with MATLAB, which incorporates many general-purpose numerical analysis functions, thereby enabling development man-hours to be reduced significantly.

3. Modeling Principle

3.1. Formulation of powertrain model

Equations of motion are formulated for each rotating part and can be expressed in matrix form as follows:

トルクの関係式

$$I_{1}\dot{\omega}_{1} + k_{1}T_{inter1} + \cdots = T_{input} + T_{critist} + \cdots$$

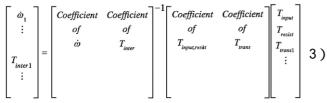
$$I_{2}\dot{\omega}_{2} + k_{2}T_{inter2} + \cdots = T_{relist} + T_{critist} + \cdots$$

$$\vdots$$

$$I_{1}\dot{\omega}_{1} + k_{1}T_{inter1} + \cdots = T_{critist} + \cdots$$

$$(1)$$

回転の関係式



I: inertia of each rotating part

: angular velocity

k, a, b: coefficients of planetary gearsets

Tinter: interaction torque

Tinput: input torque to input shaft

Tresist: torque resistance to output shaft

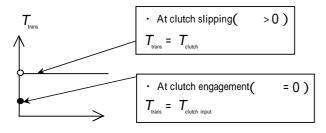
T_{clutch}: torque transmitted by clutches, brakes and one-

way clutches

3.2. クラッチ特性モデル

従来のクラッチ伝達トルクTtransをFig. 1に示す. 今回のクラッチ伝達トルクはFig. 2に示すように, クラッチの相対回転数の関数(微少滑りの存在によ り,トルク容量は発生する)とした.従来方式では, 締結時とスリップ時で場合分けが必要となる.今 回の方式では連続して扱うことが可能となる.

Conventional



 T_{trans} : Clutch - transmitted torque T_{clutch} : Clutch torque capacity

 $T_{\text{clutch input}}$: Input torque to clutch

Fig. 1 Conventional model of clutch-transmitted torque

Relational equations for torque

$$I_{1} \overset{\dot{\omega}_{1}}{\omega} + k_{1}T_{boter1} + \cdots = T_{bopol} + T_{rous1} + \cdots$$

$$I_{2} \overset{\dot{\omega}_{2}}{\omega} + k_{2}T_{boter2} + \cdots = T_{rotal} + T_{rous2} + \cdots$$

$$\vdots$$

$$I_{1} \overset{\dot{\omega}_{1}}{\omega} + k_{2}T_{boter1} + \cdots = T_{boter1} + \cdots$$

$$(1)$$

Relational equations for rotation

$$\dot{\mathcal{O}}_{inggear1} + \alpha_{_{1}} \dot{\mathcal{O}}_{sungear1} + \beta_{_{1}} \dot{\mathcal{O}}_{career1} = 0$$

$$\vdots$$

$$\dot{\mathcal{O}}_{inggearj} + \alpha_{_{j}} \dot{\mathcal{O}}_{sungearj} + \beta_{_{j}} \dot{\mathcal{O}}_{careerj} = 0$$
(2)

I: inertia of each rotating part

: angular velocity

k, a, b: coefficients of planetary gearsets

Tinter: interaction torque

Tinput: input torque to input shaft

Tresist: torque resistance to output shaft

Tclutch: torque transmitted by clutches, brakes and one-

way clutches

3.2. Model of clutch characteristics

A conventional model of clutch-transmitted torque Ttrans is shown in Fig. 1. As the newly developed model in Fig. 2 shows, clutch-transmitted torque is defined as a function of the relative rotational speed of a clutch (the existence of micro slipping produces torque capacity). With the conventional method, it was necessary to switch between programs for the engaged and slipping states. The newly adopted method allows clutch characteristics to be treated continuously with one program.



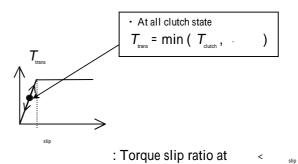


Fig. 2 New model of clutch-transmitted torque

3.3. モデル (関数) の考え方

本シミュレーションでは、『トルク/滑り速度』 は非常に重要なパラメータである.

すなわち, の傾きが小さすぎる場合,このクラッチは相対回転数が大きな値で収束(締結)することとなり,結果として,ギヤ比検討などの際,大きな誤差を生じる.逆に, を大きくしすぎると,シミュレーションが発散する.

今回,シミュレーションを構築するにあたり,発散の起こらない の条件を求めることで,今後の 設定が容易に行えるようにした.参考にFig.3 に示す一自由度のクラッチモデルについてオイラー法積分を用いた場合の発散しない の条件を式(8)に示す.計算フローをFig.4に示す.

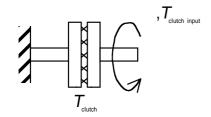


Fig. 3 A degree of freedom clutch model

Fig. 4のクラッチモデルについてトルクの釣り合いは

$$I\dot{\omega} = T_{\text{state input}} - T_{\text{state}} \tag{4}$$

となる (4)式は ≈ 0の条件で

$$\frac{d\omega}{dt} = \frac{\left(T_{clutch input} - \kappa \omega\right)}{I} \tag{5}$$

計算周期を tとし (5)式を離散化すると

$$\omega(n) = \omega(n-1) + \frac{T_{clutch input} - \kappa \cdot \omega(n-1)}{I} \cdot \Delta t \qquad (6)$$

(6)式よりn,n-1番目の の関係は

$$\omega(n) - \omega(n-1) = \left(1 - \frac{\kappa}{I} \cdot \Delta t\right)^{n-1} \left\{\omega(1) - \omega(0)\right\} \quad (7)$$

(7)式の右辺が収束する条件は(8)式となる.

Convergence condition
$$\Rightarrow \left| 1 - \frac{\kappa}{I} \Delta t \right| < 1$$
 (8)

3.3. Model (function) concept

An extremely important parameter in this simulation model is k, representing " torque/slipping velocity." In short, if the slope of is too small, the clutch will converge (engage) at a high relative speed. As a result, large error will occur at the stage of studying the gear ratios. Conversely, the simulation will diverge if is made too large.

In constructing this simulation model, the condition of that does not give rise to divergence was found, making it easy to design in future projects. By way of reference, the condition of that does not cause divergence for the one-degree-of-freedom clutch model shown in Fig. 3 was found by Euler's method of integration and is expressed by Eq. (8). The calculation flow is shown in Fig. 4.

The torque balance for the clutch model in Fig. 4 is given by

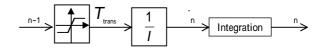


Fig. 4 Flow of calculation

The torque balance for the clutch model in Fig. 4 is given by

$$I\dot{\omega} = T_{\text{clutch input}} - T_{\text{clutch}}$$

Under the condition that \approx 0, Eq. (4) becomes

$$\frac{d\omega}{dt} = \frac{\left(T_{\text{clutch input}} - \kappa \omega\right)}{I} \tag{5}$$

Setting t as the calculation cycle and discretizing Eq. (5), we obtain

$$\omega(n) = \omega(n-1) + \frac{T_{\text{clutch input}} - \kappa \omega(n-1)}{I} \cdot \Delta t \qquad (6)$$

From Eq. (6), the relationship between n and the n-1th becomes

$$\omega(n) - \omega(n-1) = \left(1 - \frac{\kappa}{I} \cdot \Delta t\right)^{n-1} \left\{\omega(1) - \omega(0)\right\} \quad (7)$$

The condition for the convergence of the right-hand term of Eq. (7) is expressed by Eq. (8).

Convergence condition
$$\Rightarrow \left| 1 - \frac{\kappa}{I} \Delta t \right| < 1$$
 (8)

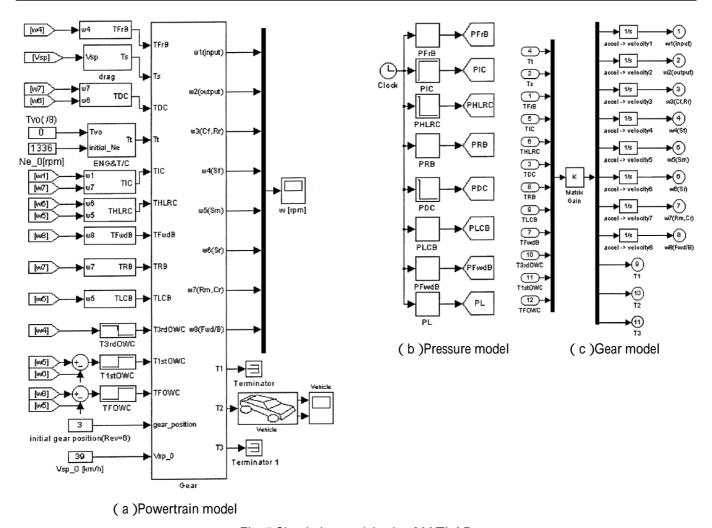


Fig. 5 Simulation model using MATLAB

4.MATLABによるプログラム化

The MATH WORKS社の汎用数値解析プログラム「MATLAB」を用いて、パワートレーンモデルをプログラム化した例をFig.5に示す(b)で計算した各クラッチの油圧を(a)のクラッチに入力する(a)はクラッチの他にエンジントルク、車両走行抵抗等を計算するブロックを含み、AT内に作用するトルクを計算する(a)中のGear内部は(c)のようになっており(a)のトルクからAT内の各メンバの回転数、伝達トルクを計算する.

4. Programming with MATLAB

Figure 5 shows an example of the powertrain simulation model created with MATLAB, a general-purpose numerical analysis program provided by The MathWorks, Inc. The hydraulic pressure calculated for each clutch with the pressure model in (b) is input into the clutches in the powertrain model in (a). The model in (a) also includes blocks for calculating engine torque, vehicle running resistance and other parameters, in addition to the clutch pressures. This model calculates the torque acting on various parts inside the AT. The gear block in (a) is constructed as shown by the gear model in (c). Based on the torque calculated in (a), the rotational speed of each AT member and the amount of torque it transmits are calculated.

Fig. 6に本シミュレーションモデルを用いた1-2ア ップシフト加速度変化の計算例を示す.次に,設 計段階で事前に不具合を予測し,対策を行った事 例を紹介する. Fig. 7に示す5-2ダウンシフトは複数 のクラッチを開放・締結するため、従来、設計検 討による最適な制御部設計は困難で,実験を繰り 返し行う必要があった.設計検討中,本シミュレ ーションにより油圧のバランスが悪い場合,ギヤ 変化中に突起状の加速度変化が発生することが判 明した(図中a). 本シミュレーションモデルは,計 算結果に各部位の回転速度が含まれるため、変速 のメカニズム解析に有効である.このパラメータ を解析することにより,前述の加速度変化の発生 原因を抽出した、その結果を変速制御部設計にフ ィードバックすることで,不具合を未然に防止し, 図中(b)のような滑らかな変速を実現した.

Figure 6 shows an example of the change in vehicle acceleration calculated with this simulation model for an upshift from first to second gear.

The following example concerns an advance prediction of potential problems at the design stage and the measures taken to resolve them. The downshift from fifth to second gear shown in Fig. 7 is executed by disengaging and engaging many clutches. Previously, since it was difficult to design the optimum control procedure on the basis of design studies, repeated tests had to be conducted with actual hardware. In the design study, it was found with this simulation model that a spike-like change in vehicle acceleration occurred during the downshift shown in (a) in Fig. 7. This simulation model is effective in analyzing the shift mechanism because the calculation results include the rotational speed of every part. An analysis of this parameter revealed the cause of the spike-like change in vehicle acceleration. That result was fed back to the shift control design to prevent this problem from occurring in the first place. As a result, smooth shifting performance like that seen in (b) in Fig. 7 has been obtained.

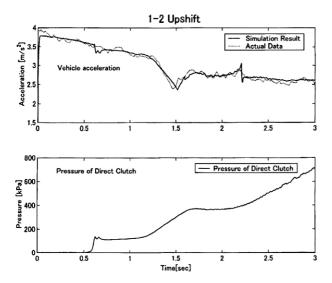


Fig. 6 Example of upshift simulation from first to second gear

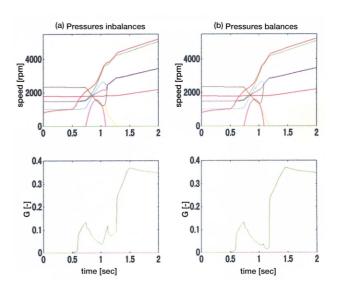


Fig. 7 Example of downshift simulation from fifth to second gear

5. まとめ

- (1) 従来の計算方法に対して効率の良い開発手法を導入する事で開発工数を大幅に短縮できた.
- (2) 計算周期と滑り速度の関係について安定条件を導出した.
- (3) 多段のパワートレーンモデルの作成に有効である(従来方法だと場合分けが複雑になる).
- (4) 各回転部位の回転数,伝達トルクが計算できるので,変速ショックのメカニズム解析に有効である.

最後に,開発にあたり多大な御協力を頂きました日産自動車(株)パワートレイン開発本部ドライブトレイン開発部の皆様,及び先行開発部 松村 SCR 開発管理部 滝殿に,深く感謝の意を表します.

5. Conclusions

- (1) The introduction of a more efficient development tool than the previous calculation method has made it possible to reduce development man-hours substantially.
- (2) A stability condition was derived for the relationship between the calculation cycle and slipping velocity.
- (3) This condition is effective for creating the powertrain model of an AT with a greater number of speed ranges. The new method eliminates the switching between programs that was required with the previous approach.
- (4) Because the rotational speed of every rotating element and the torque it transmits can be calculated, the method is effective in analyzing the mechanism of shift shock.

Finally, the authors would first like to thank NISSAN MOTOR CO., LTD. Powetrain Engineering Division, Drivetrain Engineering Department, as well as T. Matsumura, Senior Chief Researcher, of the Advance Development Group and M. Taki of the R&D Administration Department for their valuable cooperation in connection with the development of this new shift control.

Authors



Tatsuya IMAMURA



Osamu SATO



Kazuhito SANO



Kazuo TOMIOKA

リニア型インヒビタスイッチの開発

Development of a Linear-Stroke Inhibitor Switch

渡辺 真司*

矢田 宏之*

Shinji WATANABE

Hiroyuki YADA

抄 録 従来,ATのインヒビタスイッチはATユニットの外側に取り付けられ,ロータリ式で各ポジションごとに固有の接点を持つタイプであった.

今回,コストダウン及びフェールセーフ機能の向上のためATユニットに内蔵するとともに,直線的にストロークし4接点のON/OFFの組み合わせでレンジ位置をコード出力するリニア型インヒビタスイッチを開発し,新型5速FR ATに採用した.

Summary The conventional rotary inhibitor switch that has been attached to the outside of ATs has individual contacts for the signals of each selector lever position. We have developed a new linear-stroke inhibitor switch that combines the On/Off signals of four contacts to output a coded signal of the selector lever position. Developed to reduce the cost and improve fail-safe functionality, this inhibitor switch has been incorporated in an all-new 5-speed AT for use on rear-wheel-drive cars.

1. 開発の狙い

本インヒビタスイッチ(Fig. 1)の開発目的はコストダウンとフェールセーフ機能の向上である.

ATユニット内蔵にすることで,これまで必要であった水浸入に対するシールの廃止,耐塩害,耐亜硫酸ガス等,耐環境対策のためのコストが不要になった。

また,出力信号をコード化することによりフェールセーフ機能が向上し,大電流対応のスタータ専用接点を廃止することができた.

その一方でオートマチック トランスミッション フルード(以下ATF)の飛散している雰囲気中での使用のため,接点の接触信頼性の確保,耐夾雑物性が新たな課題になった.

1. Development Aims

The development aims set for the new inhibitor switch (Fig. 1) were to reduce the cost and improve fail-safe functionality. Housing the switch inside the AT eliminated the cost of measures needed so far for protection against the harsh vehicle environment. This included eliminating seals for preventing water incursion and measures for avoiding damage caused by salt, sulfurous acid gas and other substances.

In addition, coding the output signals improved failsafe functionality and eliminated the need for the dedicated starter contact used previously to handle large current.

On the other hand, using the inhibitor switch in an atmosphere where it is splattered by automatic transmission fluid (ATF) raised other new issues such as assuring the contact reliability of the contacts and protection against foreign matter.

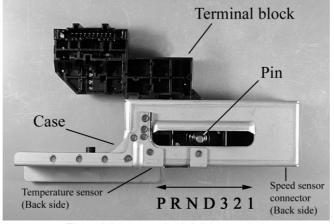


Fig. 1 Linear-stroke inhibitor switch

^{*}機能部品開発グループ Functional Component Development Group

2. インヒビタスイッチの構造

本インヒビタスイッチは、ATユニット内に置かれ可動接点が直線的にスライドすることで各々のポジション信号を切り換え、出力することから、AT内蔵型リニアインヒビタスイッチと呼ばれる.

ポジション数はP,R,N,D,3,2,1の7ポジションであるが,出力信号としてはこれらのポジションの他,フェールセーフのために,PとR,RとN,NとD,2と1の間にそれぞれP-R,R-N,N-D,2-1の中間ポジションを設定した.

なお,本スイッチはインヒビタスイッチ単体としての機能だけではなく,油温センサや車速センサ用コネクタも実装され配線板としての機能も持っている.

本インヒビタスイッチは固定接点側のターミナルブロック,可動接点側のムービングブロック, 外部構造体としてのケースの主に3部品からなる. (Fig. 2)

ターミナルブロックは耐熱耐油性樹脂製でS1, S2, S3, S4の各接点信号ラインと接点信号の共通グランドであるGNDライン,温度センサの出力及びグランド,車速センサの電源,出力,グランドの計10本の電極がインサート成型されている.また,GNDラインはフェールセーフの観点からケースに接続されコントロールバルブボディを介してATケースに接地されている.

接続用コネクタは限られたスペースに10極をレイアウトする制約から,既存のコネクタをベースに端子を一直線に配置した直列10極型コネクタを新開発している.

ムービングブロックはターミナルブロックと同じく樹脂製で,スライダ(Fig. 3)と呼ばれるバネ特性を持った電極と,ブロックと一体成形された駆動ピンが取り付けられている.

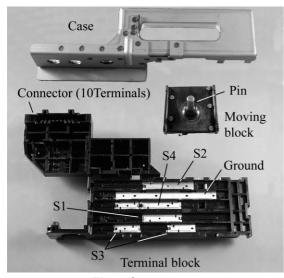


Fig. 2 Components

2. Structure of Inhibitor Switch

This inhibitor switch is housed inside the AT and its movable contacts slide linearly, thereby switching and outputting the selector lever position signals. Because of this structure, it is called a built-in linear-stroke inhibitor switch

There are seven selector lever positions: P, R, N, D, 3rd, 2nd and 1st. In addition to the output signals for these seven positions, output signals are also provided for intermediate positions between P and R (P-R), R and N (R-N), N and D (N-D) and 2nd and 1st (2nd-1st) for fail-safe purposes.

Besides its individual function as an inhibitor switch, it also serves as a wiring board in that it mounts the connectors for the temperature sensor and vehicle speed sensor. The inhibitor switch comprises three principal components: a terminal block on the fixed contact side, a moving block on the movable contact side and a case as its external structure (Fig. 2).

The terminal block is made of plastic having good resistance to heat and oil. It is molded with a total of ten inserted terminals for the contact signal lines (S1, S2, S3 and S4), the common ground line (GND) of the contact signals, the output and ground lines of the temperature sensor, and the power, output and ground lines of the vehicle speed sensor. For the purpose of the fail-safe function, the common ground line is connected to the inhibitor switch case and to the transmission case by means of the control valve body.

Based on the previous connector, a new connector was developed in which the ten terminals are arranged in series in a straight line due to the restriction on the terminal layout because of the limited space available.

Like the terminal block, the moving block is also made of plastic (Fig. 3). Attached to it are contacts called sliders, which have a spring characteristic, and a drive pin that is integrated with the block.

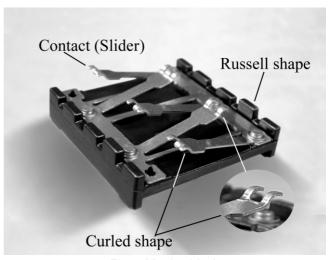


Fig. 3 Moving block

スライダ上のGNDに対する接点は常にGNDラインと接触していて、ムービングブロックの移動によりその位置に応じてS1からS4に対応する接点がターミナルブロック上の各電極に接触することでON/OFF信号を発生させる.

ON/OFFの切り換えはターミナルブロック上の乗り上げ構造により,スライダ接点が上下することで実現している.

3. 取り付けレイアウト

従来のATユニット外付けのロータリ式インヒビタスイッチではマニュアルシャフトの回転を伝達してスイッチの可動接点を駆動しているのに対し、本スイッチは可動接点上のピンが直接マニュアルバルブと嵌合するようになっている.(Fig. 4)

The ground contact on the sliders is always in contact with the common ground line. The movement of the moving block brings the contacts of the S1 to S4 contact lines in contact with the terminals on the terminal block according to the position of the former block, thereby generating On/Off signals. Switching of the On/Off signals is accomplished by the vertical movement of the slider contacts, which are constructed such that they slide up on the terminal block.

3. Installation Layout

With the conventional rotary inhibitor switch that is attached to the outside of an AT, the rotation of the manual shaft is transferred to drive the movable contacts of the switch. In contrast, with the new inhibitor switch, the pin on the movable contacts is set directly in the manual valve (Fig. 4).

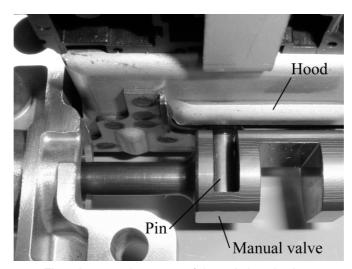


Fig. 4 Integrated structure of the switch and valve

また, Fig. 5に示すようにスイッチそのものがマニュアルバルブボディ上に位置決めされているため,油圧切り換え位置と接点切り換え位置の関係が部品寸法のみで直接決まるようになり, Nレンジ位置合わせ不要の無調整化を達成できた.

4. ATF雰囲気での使用

本スイッチはATユニット内部での使用の上に密 閉構造を採用していないために,ATFがスイッチ内 部に自由に出入りする.このため接点の接触信頼 性とATF中の夾雑物への耐性の確保が課題であっ た. As shown in Fig. 5, because the inhibitor switch is positioned on the manual valve body, the relation between the pressure switching position and the contact switching position is determined directly by the part dimensions alone. This design eliminates the need for adjustments, making it unnecessary to align the N selector lever position.

4. Use in ATF Atmosphere

Since this inhibitor switch is housed inside the AT, it does not adopt a tightly sealed structure, which allows the ATF to enter the switch freely. Consequently, assuring the contact reliability of the contacts and securing durability against foreign matter in the ATF were issues that had to be addressed.

4.1. 接触信頼性

接点材料によってはATFと反応し表面に絶縁性の酸化被膜を形成してしまい,導通を妨げてしまう.また,高温でも酸化被膜が形成される場合があるため,本スイッチでは高温,ATF中で酸化被膜を形成しないような材料が選定されている.接触信頼性の確保には接点圧力を増加させることも有効であるが,それには摺動による接点の摩耗が副作用として伴う.そのため,長期にわたりバネ力が低下せず安定していること,耐摩耗性が良好であることも考慮した上で選定をしている.

4.2. 耐夾雑物性

AT内夾雑物に関わる課題として

- a. 接点部摩耗による接点導通域の変化
- b. 夾雑物噛み込みによる操作力の増大
- c. 導電性夾雑物による信号線間でのショート及び絶縁性夾雑物による非導通

がある.

接点部摩耗については材料選定において耐摩耗性の高い材料を選ぶのはもとより夾雑物の堆積を防ぐような構造にしている.

信号線間でのショートについては,ターミナルブロックのスライド用ガイドの壁(Fig. 6)により十分な空間距離および縁面距離を確保している.

4.2.1. ATF浸入の防止

ATFのスイッチ接点部への浸入を少しでも防ぐために,油浸入側の開口面積を極力減らしている.また,ケースの駆動ピン移動部にはひさしを設け(Fig. 4)上から落ちてくるATFが内部に入りにくいようにしている.

その一方で油流出側は開口部を大きく取り排出を容易にしている.

これらによりスイッチ内部に油が停留するのを 防ぎ,夾雑物が内部に堆積しないようにした.

4.2.2. 夾雑物の強制排除

ムービングブロックおよびターミナルブロック には内部に浸入した夾雑物を積極的に排除する構 造を設けた.

4.1. Contact reliability

Some types of contact material may react with the ATF to form a nonconducting oxide film on the contact surface that prevents the flow of current. Since an oxide film can sometimes form even at high temperatures, a switch material was selected that does not form an oxide film in the ATF under a high temperature condition. Increasing the contact pressure is one effective way of assuring contact reliability, but it also has the undesirable effect of promoting contact wear due to rubbing. Accordingly, the contact pressure was selected so as to achieve a stable spring force without any decline over a long period of use and also to provide good wear resistance.

4.2. Protection against for eign matter

Issues related to foreign matter in the ATF include:

- a. Changes in the current flow area of contacts due to contact wear
- b. An increase in operating force due to foreign matter caught in moving parts
- c. Short-circuiting between signal lines caused by conductive foreign matter or blockage of current flow due to nonconducting foreign matter

Naturally, a material having excellent wear resistance was selected for the contacts. The contacts have also been designed so as to avoid the buildup of foreign matter.

To prevent short-circuiting between the signal lines, sufficient air gaps and insulating gaps are provided by the walls of the guide for the sliders of the terminal block (Fig. 6).

4.2.1. Prevention of ATF incursion

The open area through which ATF might enter the inhibitor switch has been reduced as much as possible to avoid fluid incursion even if just by a little. In addition, a hood (Fig. 4) is provided over the area of the case where the drive pin moves to lessen the chance of incursion by ATF that drips down from above. On the other hand, the ATF exit has been designed with a large opening to allow easy fluid discharge.

These measures prevent fluid from collecting inside the switch and also avoid the buildup of foreign matter on the inside.

4.2.2. Forced removal of foreign matter

The moving block and terminal block are both constructed for aggressive removal of foreign matter.

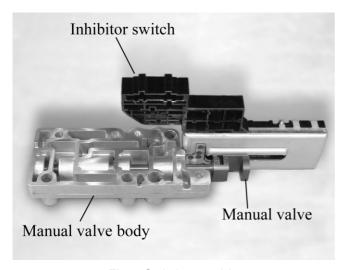
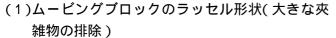


Fig. 5 Switch assembly



可動部クリアランス部での夾雑物噛み込みによる操作力上昇を防止するため,ムービングブロックは角Rをとり,エッジでの噛み込みを防止している.

また,ムービングブロックのラッセル構造 (電極上に位置する凸部 Fig. 3)により,大き な夾雑物は外側に押しやられるようにし,接点 摺動面への浸入を防いでいる.

- (2)スライダのカール形状(中程度の夾雑物の排除) スライダ接点部は摺動抵抗を下げるためにカール形状(Fig.3)をしている.この形状は更に接点 摺動面の夾雑物を寄せ集め,外側に掻き出すのに役立っている.
- (3)夾雑物排除用エアギャップ(微細夾雑物の排除) 小さな夾雑物はスライダ接点のカール形状で 寄せ集めることはできてもなかなか排除しきれ ない.そこで固定接点(ターミナルブロック側) に切れ目をつけスイッチ裏側に貫通する穴 (Fig. 6)をあけることで,集積された夾雑物を この穴に落とし,排除する構造にした.

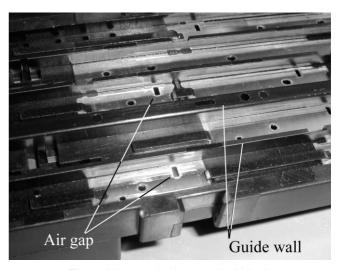


Fig. 6 Air gaps in the terminal block

(1) Russell shape of moving block for removing large foreign matter

The moving block is designed with rounded edges to prevent foreign matter from becoming caught in the clearance of moving parts, which would raise the necessary operating force.

The Russell shape (projections located above the terminals in Fig. 3) of the moving block serves to push large foreign matter to the outside, thereby preventing it from penetrating to the sliding surface of the contacts.

(2) Curled shape of sliders for removing medium-sized foreign matter

The slider contacts have a curled shape (Fig. 3) to reduce sliding resistance. This shape also serves to collect foreign matter on the sliding surface of the contacts and to sweep it toward the outside.

(3) Air gaps for removing fine foreign matter

The curled shape of the slider contacts can collect small foreign matter but cannot easily evacuate it. To remove fine foreign matter, slits are provided in the fixed terminals on the terminal block and holes are opened through to the back side of the inhibitor switch (Fig. 6). Collected foreign matter is pushed into the holes and removed through the back.

5. 接点信号

信号線はS1からS4の4本でこれらがグランドと 導通する事でON信号を作っている(Table 1)また, 従来のようなPレンジ,Nレンジでのスタータ用接 点は持っていない。

5.1. グレイコード

信号はS1からS4のON/OFF状態の組み合わせで4 ビットのコード出力をしている.

ビットの並びは二進法表記が一般によく知られているが,二進法では0011の次が0100というように一度に二つ以上のビットが反転する場合がある.本スイッチは隣り合うパターンでは変化するビットは常に一つだけとなるようなグレイコードを採用している.¹⁾

このことにより,例えば断線等が発生した場合,一度に二つ以上のビットが変化するパターンが出現する事になり,誤検知をより発見しやすくしている.

5.2. フェールセーフ

車両の安全性を確保するために一カ所の信号線で断信号等が発生した場合でも下記のような誤検知をおこさないようにコードパターンが選定されている

- a. スタータ始動可能位置でないのに,スタータ始動可能にならないこと.
- b.シフトレバーがRレンジ位置でないのにR位置と検出されないこと.
- c. シフトレバーがRレンジ位置なのに,Rレンジ 以外と検出されないこと.

5.2.1. 中間レンジの設置

本スイッチではビットパターン上,中間レンジP-R,R-N,N-D,2-1が設定されている.

中間レンジはレンジとは直接関係ないが,断線・ショートが起きた場合の異常の検出を確実にしている.

5. Contact Signals

The four signal lines from S1 to S4 pass current to the ground line, thereby producing an On signal (Table 1). Unlike the previous inhibitor switch, there is no starter contact for the P and N selector lever positions.

5.1. Gray code

Four-bit coded signals are output by combining the On/Off states of the four contact signals S1 to S4. The binary system of notation is a widely known way of representing bits. With the binary system, however, there are times when two or more bits are reversed at one time, as in the case of 0100 being the next notation after 0011. The new inhibitor switch adopts the gray code in which there is always just one bit that changes in adjacent patterns. As a result, in the event a wire should break, for example, a pattern would appear in which two or more bits change at one time, which makes it easier to detect troubles.

5.2. Fail-safe

To ensure vehicle safety, code patterns have been selected so as to satisfy the conditions noted below even in the event that a broke wire or some other problem should occur at one location in the signal lines.

- a. The engine must not start even though the selector lever is in a position that normally does not allow the engine to be started.
- b. The R position must not be detected even though the selector lever is not in the R position.
- c. Some other position besides the R position must not be detected even though the shift lever is in the R position.

5.2.1. Establishment of intermediate positions

With this inhibitor switch, the bit patterns include intermediate selector lever positions, i.e., P-R, R-N, N-D and 2nd-1st. These intermediate positions are not directly related to the selector lever positions, but they facilitate reliable detection of trouble in the event a wire breaks or a short-circuit occurs.

Table 1 On/Off pattern

Position	S1	S2	S3	S4
Р				
P - R				
R				
N-R				
N				
N - D				
D				
3				
2				
2 - 1				
1				

例えば中間レンジが無い場合PレンジとRレンジは隣り合うことになるが,ある信号線に断線が発生した場合1ビットの変化が生じ,場合によってはRレンジがPレンジに変化してしまう可能性がある.この場合上記のa.に反する.これに対し中間コードP-Rを挿入することでRレンジから変化してもP-Rにとどまる事ができる.

6. まとめ

今後新規開発されるインヒビタスイッチの多くが、本スイッチと同様のATユニット中置きのリニアストロークタイプを採用するであろうが、本スイッチの開発で得られたノウハウは今後の製品の礎になると考える.

最後に本開発に多大なご協力を頂いた,日産自動車(株)パワートレイン開発本部ドライブトレイン開発部の皆様及びナイルス部品株式会社をはじめ関係会社及び社内関連部署の皆様に深く感謝の意を表します.

参考文献

1) 立木秀樹 グレイコードと実数 bit 2000年1月号 (http://www.i.h.kyoto_u.ac.jp/ tsuiki/bit/gray.htm)

Without intermediate positions, the P position and R position are adjacent. If a wire should break in one signal line, one bit would change. In some cases, the R position might change to the P position, which would run counter to (a) mentioned above. In contrast, by inserting an intermediate P-R code, even if there should be a change from the R position, it can be limited to P-R.

6. Conclusion

Many of the inhibitor switches that will be newly developed in the future will probably be of the linear-stroke type that is housed inside the AT like the switch described here. The know-how gained through the development of this inhibitor switch will serve as the foundation for the development of future products.

Finally, the authors would first like to thank NISSAN MOTOR CO., LTD. Powetrain Engineering Division, Drivetrain Engineering Department, Niles Parts Co., Ltd., as well as other related companies and the in-house departments concerned for their tremendous cooperation in connection with the development of this inhibitor switch.

Reference

 H. Tsuiki, "The Gray Code and Real Numbers," bit, Jan. 2000 (in Japanese). (http://www.i.h.kyoto_u.ac.jp/ tsuiki/bit/gray.htm)





Shinji WATANABE



Hiroyuki YADA

電子キャリブレーションによるソレノイド油圧精度向上

Improvement of Solenoid Pressure Control Accuracy by Electronic Calibration

石井 繁*

杉内 仁*

野武 久雄**

遠藤 勝久***

藤島 香***

Shigeru ISHII

Masashi SUGIUCHI

Hisao NOBU

Katsuhisa ENDOU

Kaoru FUJISHIMA

抄 録 新開発JR507E型FR用5速自動変速機では,小型化,軽量化を達成した上で変速性能を大幅に向上させるため,摩擦要素毎に油圧を直接制御するクラッチ圧直接電子制御システム(以下直動システムとする)を採用している.直動システムは,クラッチ締結時の油圧を細かく制御できるため,変速時油圧を適正に作り出せるが,リニアソレノイド(以下リニアSOLとする)に指示した油圧値に対し,実際に発生した油圧値との差を最小にする必要がある.そこで,許された生産ラインのタクト(工程スピード)内で,リニアSOL油圧のばらつきを最小にできる,油圧電子キャリブレーション・システムを開発した.

Summary The newly developed JR507 5-speed automatic transmission for rear-wheel-drive cars adopts a computerized control system for direct clutch pressure control, referred to as a Direct Acting System. This system directly controls the hydraulic pressure of every friction element to improve shifting performance in connection with the attainment of a smaller, lighter transmission.

The Direct Acting System precisely controls the oil pressure at clutch engagement to generate the optimum hydraulic pressure for shifting. However, it is necessary to minimize any discrepancy between the hydraulic pressure specified for the linear solenoids and the actual pressure generated. Therefore, we developed a computerized hydraulic pressure calibration system to minimize variation in linear solenoid pressure within the allowed production line cycle time (process speed).

1.はじめに

近年自動変速機(以下ATとする)は,お客様からの要望から「より滑らかな,あるところではメリハリをつけた変速」という人間の感性にかなった,細かな制御が求められている.そのためAT制御部の中でも特に油圧制御部について,より高度で緻密な制御が必要となってきた.高度な制御をいかに低コストで実現できるかが大きな課題であり,低コストで実現するため生産ラインのタクトを維持した上で,リニアSOL出力圧の要求精度を達成する事が必要となった.

本稿では,上記条件を満足させた,油圧電子キャリプレーション・システムを紹介する.

2. 開発の狙い

油圧電子キャリブレーション・システムの開発の目的は,以下のとおりである.

1. Introduction

In recent years, customers have expressed demands for automatic transmissions (ATs) that shift more smoothly and also with a modulated sensation in certain places. Meeting such demands requires finer control that more closely matches human sensitivities. Consequently, it has become necessary to provide more sophisticated and accurate AT control, especially with regard to hydraulic pressure control. A big issue here is the question of how more accurate control can be achieved at low cost. To achieve such control at low cost, it is necessary to attain the control accuracy required for the linear solenoid output pressure while maintaining the production line cycle time.

This paper describes a computerized hydraulic pressure calibration system that satisfies these conditions.

2. Development Objectives

The following objectives were set for the development of the computerized hydraulic pressure calibration system.

^{*} 新横浜開発センター

Shin-Yokohama Engineering Center

^{**} 機能部品開発グループ

Functional Component Development Group

^{***} ユニット技術部

Unit Production Engineering Department

- (1)リニアSOL単体の精度を緩和することによるコストダウン
- (2)クラッチ圧の精度向上
- (3)生産ラインのタクトを目標以内とする

また,上記を達成する為のコストアップ(メモリ追加etc)を最小にする事も考慮した.上記を実現するための方法として,下図にあるType A,B,Cの3案を出しKT法のD/A(Decision Analysis)によって検討し,Type Aを最良の案とした.

検討の際に使用したD/A表をTable 1に示す.

- (1) To reduce costs by easing the accuracy required for linear solenoids themselves.
- (2) To improve clutch pressure control accuracy.
- (3) To keep the production line cycle time at the target level.

Another consideration was to minimize any cost increases (for additional memory devices, etc.) needed to accomplish these objectives. Three calibration methods, designated as Types A, B and C in Table 1, were proposed as possible ways of achieving the development objectives. They were investigated by the Kepne-Tregoe method of Decision Analysis (DA) and Type A was found to be the best proposal. The DA table used in the analysis is shown in Table 1.

Table 1 Comparison of calibration methods

	Type A	Type B	Type C
	Oil pressure	All data memory	Traditional type
	calibration type	type	
Cost reduction	0	0	×
Accuracy of clutch pressure		0	×
Cycle time	0	×	0
Minimum cost increase	0	×	0

: Good x: Poor

Type A: 油圧キャリブレーション方式 今回提案した方式 .

Type B: 全データメモリ方式 バルブテスト時 , 電流に対する油圧特性を 測定し , MAPとして , メモリする .

Type C: 従来方式で, SOL単品で,調整ネジによる調整をし,バルブテスト時には,チェックのみを行い,NGのときには,SOL交換となる.

3.システム構成

本システムの構成を説明する.

システムコンピュータとATCUは, CANによって 通信が行われている.そしてコントロールバルブ に組み込まれているリニアSOLは, ATCUから PWM(Pulse-Width Modulation:パルス幅変調)出力 によって駆動される.リニアSOLが駆動されて変化

- Type A: The hydraulic pressure calibration method proposed in this work.
- Type B: An all data memory method whereby pressure characteristics are measured in relation to an indicated current value in a valve test and a map is created and stored in memory.
- Type C: The conventional method of adjusting linear solenoids by means of adjustment screws. The solenoids are only checked in the valve test and are replaced if the result is not acceptable.

3. System Configuration

The configuration of the new calibration system is shown in Fig. 1. Communication between the system computer and the AT control unit (ATCU) is effected via the Controller Area Network (CAN). The linear solenoids incorporated in the control valve are driven by a pulse-width-modulated (PWM) signal output by the ATCU. Driving the linear solenoids changes the clutch pressures, which are detected by pressure sensors to provide analog piezoelectri

した各クラッチ圧は、圧力センサーによって検出され電圧アナログ値となり、ストレイジアンプを経由してシステムコンピュータのA/D変換器(Analog-To-Digital Converter)で、デジタル変換され、データとしてシステムコンピュータに表示・記録される.

values. The values are sent through the storage amp to the analog-to-digital (A/D) converter of the system computer where they are converted to digital values that are displayed and recorded in the system computer as data.

システム構成図をFig. 1に示す.



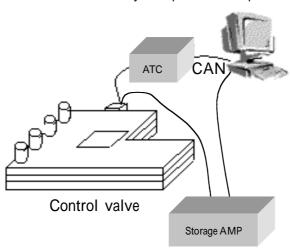


Fig. 1 System configuration

4. 油圧キャリブレーションの流れ

油圧キャリブレーションの全体の流れを工場と 車両に分け,ブロックダイアグラムをFig. 2, Fig. 3 に示す.

4. Hydraulic Pressure Calibration Flow

The overall flow of the hydraulic pressure calibration process is shown in block diagrams in Figs. 2 and 3, which divide the process between the production plant and the vehicle.

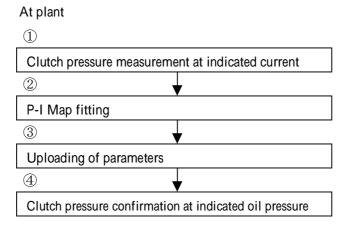


Fig. 2 Block diagram at plant

- ・工場設備での油圧キャリブレーションの算出電流指示により発生したクラッチ圧を測定する。
- Calculations for hydraulic pressure calibration at the plant

The clutch pressure generated by the indicated current is measured.

あらかじめ測定しておいたリニアSOLの静特性と 基本P-I Map(キャリブレーションをする際の基 本油圧-電流特性)から,最も形状の近いMapと Gain・Offsetを演算する.

設備PCからパラメータをROM ASSY(EEPROM) にアップロードする.

クラッチ圧指示にて各クラッチの静特性を測定し,クラッチ圧指示値と実油圧との差分を確認して,目標値内のコントロールバルブ(以下,C/V)であるか合否の判定をする.

Based on previously measured static characteristics of the linear solenoids and a basic P-I Map (basic pressure-current characteristics used in the calibration), a map that is the closest in shape is calculated along with the gain and offset values.

The parameters are uploaded from the facility PC to a ROM device (EEPROM).

The static characteristics of each clutch are measured at an indicated clutch pressure and the difference between the indicated clutch pressure and the actual pressure is confirmed. A judgment is made as to whether the control valve is within the target value or not.

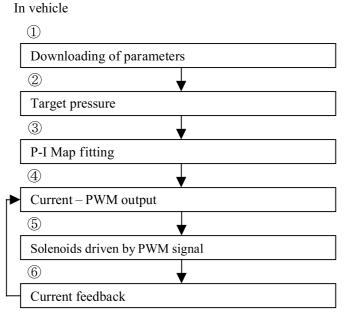


Fig. 3 Block diagram in vehicle

・車両での油圧キャリブレーションによるSOL出力車両へATCU/AT - UNITを組み付け後, IGN KEY ONの一回目のみAT - UNIT内ROM - ASSYよりキャリブレーションデータを読み出す。

通常走行時,エンジントルクから演算した値に 応じて,油圧指令を出す.

油圧指令によりMap, Gain, Offsetを参照し,指示電流値に変換する.

指示電流値をPWM - 変換Mapにより, PWM出力 に変換する.

PWM出力によりSOLを駆動する.

SOLに電流が流れると同時にモニター電流を測定 し実測値とモニター値の差から、電流フィード バックを掛ける(このとき、指示電流 モニタ ー電流 実電流が前提) • Linear solenoid output based on hydraulic pressure calibration in vehicle

After the AT and ATCU are installed in a vehicle, calibration data are read out from the ROM device incorporated in the AT only the first time the ignition key is turned on.

A hydraulic pressure command is issued in accordance with a value calculated from the engine torque during ordinary driving.

The pressure command is converted to an indicated current value in reference to the map, gain and offset values.

The indicated current value is converted to a PWM output signal based on the PWM conversion map.

The PWM signal drives the linear solenoids.

A monitor current is measured simultaneously with the flow of current through the linear solenoids, the difference between the actual current value and the monitor value is determined and that current information is fed back. It is assumed that the indicated current \cong monitor current \cong actual current.

5. キャリブレーション時間の短縮化

クラッチ圧の精度を向上をした上で,目標タク トを達成するため下記二点の方策を実施した、

1. 静特性の測定ポイント数は可能な限り多い方が 精度 向上になる.それに対し測定時間は,上 げ側下げ側共に油圧の変更時間 + 圧力が収束す るまで待つウェイトタイムの和となるため,測 定ポイントを多く取るとタクト内に収めること が厳しくなる.

そこで上げ側下げ側で計測点を間引きして,シ ミュレートしながら同じ精度が得られる所まで点 数を削減した、これにより計測点数を半分に減ら すことができた.イメージをFig. 4, Fig. 5に示す.

the following two measures were implemented to attain

Having improved clutch pressure control accuracy, the target cycle time.

5. Reduction of Calibration Time

1. Measuring static characteristics at as many points as possible leads to improved accuracy. On the other hand, taking measurements at many points makes it more difficult to complete them within the target cycle time. The reason is that the measurement time represents the sum of the time for both raising and lowering the hydraulic pressure and the waiting time until the pressure converges.

Accordingly, the number of measurement points was reduced in both the pressure raising and lowering operations until a number was reached where the same accuracy could be obtained by running a simulation. As a result, the number of measurement points was cut in half, as illustrated in Figs. 4 and 5.

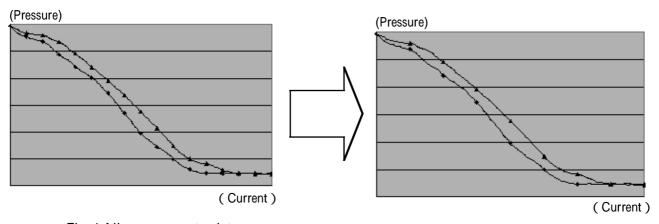


Fig. 4 All measurement points

Fig. 5 Reduction of measurement points

2. 従来,クラッチ油圧の干渉を防止する為,各ク ラッチ圧毎に油圧測定していた、その為クラッ チ数分の測定時間が必要となりタクト時間をも 目標内にすることが,厳しくなっていた.そこ で油圧回路を生成し測定油圧が干渉しないSOL について,複数のSOLを同時に計測することで タクト時間を短縮し,その際,実機で,動作を 確認し、油圧の変動が干渉しないSOLを選定す ることでタクト時間を短縮できた.

2. Previously, the hydraulic pressure of each clutch was measured in order to avoid any interference between clutch pressures. Consequently, it was difficult to keep the cycle time at the target level because several minutes were needed to measure the clutch pressures. Accordingly, a hydraulic circuit model was created to shorten the cycle time by simultaneously measuring the pressure of several linear solenoids for which there is no interference between the measured pressures. The operation of the model was confirmed with an actual AT. By selecting linear solenoids for which pressure fluctuations did not cause any interference, it was possible to shorten the cycle time.

6. 効果

SOL単品でのキャリブレーションを廃止し,タク トの目標を達成した上でクラッチ圧の精度向上が 可能になった.キャリブレーション前と後を比較 したものをFig. 6,Fig. 7に示す.

当初の狙い通り, SOL単体のバラツキを本電子キ ャリブレーションにより大幅に改善していること が判る.

6. Effects

In addition to achieving the target cycle time by discontinuing calibration for individual linear solenoids, clutch pressure control accuracy was also improved. Figures 6 and 7 compare pressure accuracy before and after calibration. It is seen that the computerized hydraulic pressure calibration system greatly reduces the variation that previously occurred with individual linear solenoids, thus achieving the initial objective of this project.

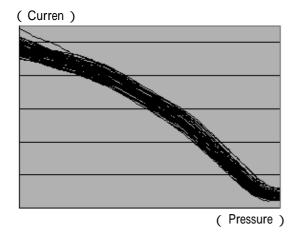


Fig. 6 Before calibration

(Curren) (Pressure)

Fig. 7 After calibration

7. おわりに

油圧キャリブレーションシステムの採用により 油圧精度が向上し,高精度に制御することが,で きるようになった.

本システムの採用にあたり,日産自動車(株)パ ワートレイン開発本部ドライブトレイン開発部の 皆様をはじめ,多大な支援とご協力いただいた 方々に深く感謝します.

7. Conclusion

The adoption of this computerized hydraulic pressure calibration system has made it possible to improve pressure control accuracy, thus providing more precise AT control.

The authors would first like to thank NISSAN MOTOR CO., LTD. Powetrain Engineering Division, Drivetrain Engineering Department, as well as various individuals for their valuable cooperation in connection with the adoption of this system.

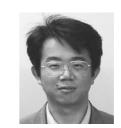
Shigeru ISHII



Masashi SUGIUCHI



Hisao NOBU





Katsuhisa ENDOU Kaoru FUJISHIMA

バンドブレーキの摩擦係合・解放特性解析

Analysis of Band Brake Engagement and Disengagement Behavior in an Automatic Transmission

加藤芳章^{*} Yoshiaki KATO

抄 録 バンドブレーキは、締結直後にピストンの締結力に対する制動トルクの立ち上がりが不十分であったり、解放直後に大きなドラグトルクを生じたりすることがある。そこで締結直後の摩擦特性とフェーシングランとの関係について計算した。さらに、バンドブレーキ解放直後のドラグトルク特性とバンドブレーキの挙動を調べ、バンド・ドラム間の油膜圧力を計測した。その結果、バンドブレーキ締結初期の摩擦係数の減少は、バンド・ドラム間の油膜厚さが大きいことに、起因し、解放直後の大きなドラグトルクは、バンド・ドラム間の油膜が負圧になることが原因であることがわかった。

Summary Frictional characteristics and drag torque characteristics of a band brake were investigated experimentally and theoretically. Measurements and calculations were made concerning the relationship between the oil film thickness and band facing width and other parameters. The oil film pressure between the band and drum was also measured immediately after band brake disengagement. It was found that the initial coefficient of friction of the band brake depended on the mean oil film thickness and that large drag torque immediately after band brake disengagement depended on the negative pressure of the oil film.

1.はじめに

遊星歯車を使用した自動変速機の場合,バンド ブレーキは遊星歯車構成メンバと直結しているド ラムの外周に配置されるため,湿式多板ブレーキ に比べて軸方向寸法を大幅に短縮することができ る.しかしバンドブレーキでは,ドラム回転方向 が作動力と同一方向の場合、セルフエナージ効果 により摩擦係数の増大に対して指数関数的に制動 トルクが増大するため、湿式多板ブレーキに比べ て、バンドブレーキ摩擦特性の制動トルクに対す る感度は非常に高い1.一方,バンドブレーキ解放 直後のドラグトルクは,バンドブレーキの形状や, バンドブレーキとドラム間の油膜により影響を受 けることが知られている⁽²⁾. そのため,これらバン ドブレーキの締結・解放特性が変速品質に及ぼす 影響は非常に大きい. そこで, 本報告ではバンド ブレーキ締結過程における摩擦特性とバンドフェ ーシングランド幅との相関や,バンドブレーキ解 放過程におけるバンドブレーキの挙動と、油膜圧 力分布を計測することにより,バンドブレーキ締 結・解放時のトルク発生メカニズムについて解析 をした.

1. Introduction

In an automatic transmission built with planetary gearsets, the band brake is positioned around the drum that is directly coupled to one of the constituent members of the planetary gearsets. Therefore, its axial dimension can be substantially reduced compared with that of a wet multiplate brake. However, when the direction of drum rotation coincides with the direction of force applied by a hydraulic piston, braking torque increases exponentially relative to the friction coefficient on account of a self-energizing effect. As a result, compared with a wet multiplate brake, the braking torque of a band brake is extremely sensitive to friction characteristics. (1) On the other hand, drag torque right after band brake disengagement is known to be influenced by the band brake geometry and the oil film thickness between the band brake and drum. (2) Consequently, the engagement/disengagement behavior of the band brake has a critical effect on shift quality.

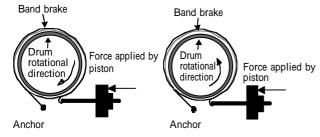
This paper presents an analysis of the correlation between friction characteristics in the band brake engagement process and the band facing width. It also presents an analysis of the mechanism generating torque when the band brake engages and disengages. That was done by measuring band brake behavior in the disengagement process and the oil film pressure distribution.

^{*} 先行開発グループ Advance Development Group

2. バンドブレーキの構造と機能

バンドブレーキは、金属製のストラップ内周面に湿式摩擦材が接着された帯状のバンドを油圧ピストンの作動力により、回転するドラムに巻き付けて制動停止させる摩擦締結要素である。Fig. 1はバンドブレーキの構造と、主要部位の名称を示したものである。バンドブレーキの特徴は、油圧ピストン作動力が同一であっても、ドラム回転方向がピストン作動力と同一の場合の制動トルクが異なる点にある。すなわち、ドラム回転方向がピストン作動力と同一の場合の制動トルクTbは、Tb=Fs・R(e¹-1)で表され、このような制動トルクが得られるドラムの回転方向をセルフエナージ方向と呼んでいる。

一方、ドラム回転方向とピストン作動力の方向が逆の場合の制動トルクTbは、Tb=Fs・R(1-1/e[®])で表され、このような制動トルクが得られるドラム回転方向をディエナージ方向と呼んでいる.これらの式中に用いられるμは、バンドブレーキの摩擦係数であり、ドラム回転速度や、面圧、潤滑流量などにより影響を受ける.さらに非締結状態においては、ドラムがバンドブレーキとの間に油膜を介した状態で回転するため引きずりトルクを発生し、特にバンドブレーキ解放直後には高い引きずりトルクを発生することがある.



Self-energizing direction

De-energizing direction

Fig. 1 Construction of band brake

3. 摩擦係合特性解析

3.1.バンド油溝本数とμ-V特性の相関

油溝がフェーシングランド幅方向の中央部に1本(以後1本溝バンドと称す)のものと,等間隔に3本(以後3本溝バンド)のもののμ-V特性をSAE No.2テスタを用いて比較した. Table 1は本実験で使用するバンドブレーキの主要諸元であり, Table 2は実験条件である. Fig. 2は,ドラム回転方向をエナージ方向にした場合のμ-V特性の比較結果である. 1本溝バンドの場合,ドラム回転数が低下し始める締結初期の制動トルクは,3本溝バンドに比べて低下している.このことから締結初期摩擦係数(μi)が,油溝の本数により影響を受けることがわかった.

2. Band Brake Construction and Function

The band brake is a friction engagement element having a wet friction material bonded to the inner surface of a metal strap. The working force of a hydraulic piston is applied to the band, causing it to wrap tightly around the rotating drum so as to brake and stop the drum. Figure 1 shows the construction of the band brake and gives the names of the major components. One characteristic of the band brake is that the braking torque obtained differs depending on whether the direction of drum rotation and the direction of the force applied by the hydraulic piston are the same or opposite. In other words, when the directions are the same, the braking torque Tb is given by Tb = Fs \cdot R(e^{μ} - 1). The direction of drum rotation in which this braking torque is obtained is referred to as the self-energizing direction. On the other hand, the braking toque Tb that is obtained when the directions are opposite is given by Tb = Fs \cdot R(1 - 1/e $^{\mu}$). The direction of drum rotation in which this braking torque is obtained is referred to as the de-energizing direction. The notation μ used in these equations is the friction coefficient of the band brake; it is influenced by the drum rotational speed, contact pressure and oil flow rate, among other factors. Additionally, drag torque occurs in a state of no engagement because the drum is turned by the oil film formed between it and the band brake. A high level of drag torque may occur especially right after band brake disengagement.

3. Analysis of Combined Friction Characteristics

3.1. Correlation between number of band oil grooves and μ -V characteristic

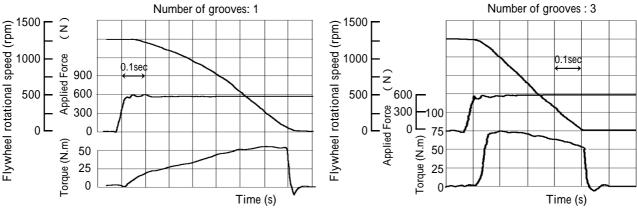
Using the SAE No. 2 tester, a comparison was made of the μ -V characteristic of a band brake with one oil groove in the center of its facing area and a band brake with three equally spaced oil grooves. The former is referred to here as a single-groove band brake and the latter as a triplegroove band brake. Table 1 gives the main specifications of the band brakes used in the tests. The test conditions are given in Table 2. Figure 2 compares the μ -V characteristics obtained when the drum rotated in the selfenergizing direction. The one-groove band brake shows a decline in braking torque, compared with the three-grove band brake, in the initial engagement period when the rotational speed of the drum started to decline. This indicates that the friction coefficient in the initial engagement period (µ i) is influenced by the number of oil grooves.

Table 1 Specification of test band brakes

Outer diame	ter of drum	169 mm				
Band strap Thickness		0.5 mm				
	Width	40 mm				
	Material	S65	5CH			
Facing	Thickness	1 1	nm			
	Material	Paper				
Lubricant		ATF (DEXRON-Ⅱ)				
Number of grooves (n)		1	3			
Groove width (w)		3 mm	2 mm			
Drain port diameter (d)		3 mm	2 mm			
Expanded view of band		w d				

Table 2 Test conditions

Oil temperature	40°C
Initial rotational speed	1247 rpm
Flywheel inertia	$0.203~\mathrm{kgm}^2$
Applied force	588 N
Oil volume	0.7 l (oil bath)



Facing area

Fig. 2 Braking torque according to the shapes of the grooves (40)

3.2.フェーシングランド幅と μ-V特性との相関

Table 3に示すようなフェーシングランド幅 40mm, 20mm, 10mmの3種類の油溝なし仕様のバ ンドブレーキを用いて、フェーシングランド幅と μ-V特性との相関を調べた. Fig. 3は油温30 で, 潤滑油流量を0.5 I/min~5 I/min変化させた場合のラ ンド幅40mmと20mmの µ-V特性測定結果である. ランド幅40mmの場合は、ドラム回転速度の増加に 伴ってバンドブレーキの摩擦係数が増加する領域, すなわちほぼ流体潤滑状態となって粘性摩擦力が 支配的な領域は,潤滑油流量が多くなるにつれて 回転速度の低い方へ広がっており,潤滑油流量が2 I/min以上では , ドラム回転速度500rpm以下になら ないと境界潤滑条件下の摩擦特性にならないこと がわかる.一方,ランド幅20mmの場合の摩擦係数 は ,締結開始ドラム回転速度である2,000rpm付近で , 影響を受けるだけである.Fig. 4は潤滑油流量1 I/minの条件下でランド幅40mm, 20mm, 10mmの μ-V特性を比較したものである.ランド幅が狭く なるに従って摩擦係数は、ドラム回転速度に依存 せずほぼ一定値になっていることがわかる.

3.2. Correlation between band facing width and *u*-V characteristics

Three band brake specifications were prepared without any oil grooves and having a respective band facing width of 40, 20 and 10 mm, as shown in Table 3. Using these band brakes, the correlation between the band facing width and μ -V characteristics was investigated.

Figure 3 shows the $\,\mu$ -V characteristics measured for the 40-mm and 20-mm band facing widths when the oil flow rate was varied over a range of 0.5-5 L/min at an oil temperature of 30 $\,$. With the 40-mm-wide band facing, as the rotational speed of the drum increased, the region of an increasing friction coefficient of the band brake (i.e., a region of fluid lubrication where viscous friction was dominant) expanded toward the low rotational speed side as the oil flow rate increased. At an oil flow rate of 2 L/min or greater, a friction coefficient indicative of a boundary lubrication condition is not observed until the rotational speed of the drum falls below 500 rpm.

Table 3 Expanded view of test bands

Facing width	40 mm	20 mm	10 mm			
Band strap						
width						
Lst=40 mm						
Outer	169 mm					
diameter of drum						
Drain port	None					
			Facing area			

On the other hand, with the 20-mm-wide band facing, the friction coefficient was influenced only in the vicinity of a drum rotational speed of 2,000 rpm at the onset of engagement. Figure 4 compares the μ -V characteristics of the 40-, 20- and 10-mm-wide band facings under a condition of an oil flow rate of 1 L/min. The results indicate that, with a narrower band facing width, the friction coefficient becomes almost constant and does not depend on the drum rotational speed.

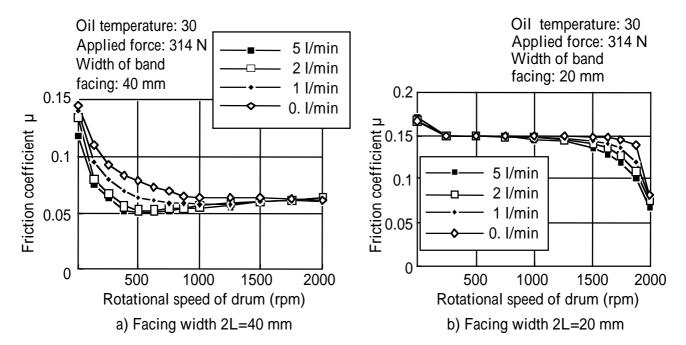


Fig. 3 Relationship between μ -V characteristics and oil flow rate

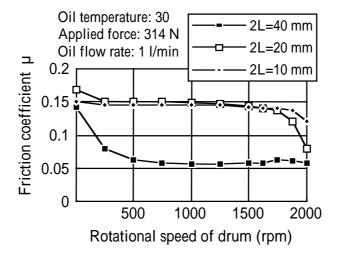


Fig. 4 Relationship between μ -V and facing width

3.3. バンドブレーキ締結初期の油膜厚さ数値解析

3.1.節,3.2.節の実験結果からバンドブレーキ締結初期の摩擦特性は,流体潤滑条件下でのものであり,バンドブレーキとドラム間の油膜厚さの影響を受けることが明らかになった.そこで,締結直後のバンドブレーキとドラム間の油膜厚さ(h)を数値計算で求めることを試みた.Fig.5に本計算のモデルを示す.

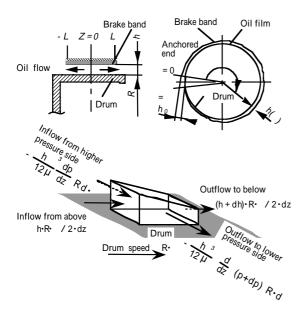


Fig. 5 Model of oil film between band and drum

バンドブレーキ周方向長さに対して,幅方向の長さは非常に短いので,バンドブレーキとドラムの間の油膜については,無限小幅近似のレイノルズ方程式を適用すると

$$\frac{d}{dz}\left(h^3\frac{dp}{dz}\right) = 6\eta\omega\,\frac{dh}{d\theta}\tag{1}$$

となる.ここでzはバンド幅方向の座標, は油粘度, はドラム回転角速度, はバンドブレーキアンカー端部からの角度である.

計算の実行にあたって前提条件を整理すると,

- (1)締結開始直後のバンド張力は全周一定である.
- (2)締結開始直後におけるバンドフェーシング 多孔性に起因する油の吸排は無視する.
- (3)バンド幅方向の油膜厚さは均一とし,かつ 表面粗さを考慮した平均厚さで扱う.

バンドフェーシング両側面(z=±L)における油膜圧力は大気圧であるという境界条件

3.3. Numerical analysis of oil film thickness in initial period of band brake engagement

The experimental results presented in subsections 3.1 and 3.2 showed that the friction coefficient in the initial period of band brake engagement is under a condition of boundary lubrication and is influenced by the oil film thickness between the band brake and drum. Therefore, an attempt was made to determine the oil film thickness (h) between the band brake and drum right after engagement by numerical calculations. Figure 5 shows the calculation model used.

Because the width of the band brake is extremely short relative to its circumferential length, the oil film thickness between the band brake and drum can be expressed with the following equation by applying the Reynolds equation for approximating an infinitesimal width.

$$\frac{d}{dz}\left(h^3\frac{dp}{dz}\right) = 6\eta\omega\,\frac{dh}{d\theta}\tag{1}$$

where z is the coordinate of the band width, h is the oil viscosity, is the angular velocity of drum rotation and is the angle from the anchored end of the band brake.

The following assumptions were made for performing the calculations.

- (1) Band tension is uniform around the entire band right after the onset of engagement.
- (2) Oil inflow and outflow due to the porosity of the band facing is ignored following the onset of engagement.
- (3) The oil film thickness is uniform across the width of the band and can be treated as the mean thickness, taking into account surface roughness.

The oil film pressure on both sides of the facing $(z = \pm L)$ is given by the following expression under a boundary condition of atmospheric pressure:

$$p = 0 \left(Z = \pm L \right) \tag{2}$$

Integrating Eq. (1) under this condition yields the following expression:

$$p\left(Z\right) = \frac{3\eta\omega}{h^3} \frac{dh}{d\theta} \left(Z^2 - L^2\right) \tag{3}$$

Moreover, because the mean oil film pressure across the width of the band facing must balance the radial component of the band brake tension,

$$\int_{-L}^{L} p \quad dz = \frac{Fs}{R} \tag{4}$$

$$p = 0 \left(Z = \pm L \right) \tag{2}$$

のもとで(1)式を積分すると

$$p\left(Z\right) = \frac{3\eta\omega}{h^3} \frac{dh}{d\theta} \left(Z^2 - L^2\right) \tag{3}$$

となる.さらにバンドフェーシング幅方向の平均油膜圧力は,バンドブレーキ張力の半径方向成分とつりあわなければならないから,

$$\int_{-L}^{L} p \quad dz = \frac{Fs}{R} \tag{4}$$

ここでFsはバンドサーボピストン押力, Rはドラム 半径である.

(3)式を(4)式に代入して解くと,

$$\frac{dh}{d\theta} = -\frac{h^3 F s}{4\eta L^3 R \omega} \tag{5}$$

(5)式を積分して

$$h = \frac{1}{\sqrt{\alpha\theta + C}} \tag{6}$$

但し =Fs/2 L3R , C=積分定数 ここでアンカー端部付近における油膜厚さh(0) =h0(実験値)とすると,バンドブレーキ周方向各部 の油膜厚さh()は下式で求まる.

$$h(\theta) = \frac{h_0}{\sqrt{\alpha h_0^2 \theta + 1}} \tag{7}$$

またバンドブレーキ巻き付角()全周にわたる平均油膜厚さ(hm)は,

$$hm = \frac{1}{\beta} \int_0^{\beta} hd \theta$$
$$= \frac{2}{\alpha \beta h_0} \left\{ \sqrt{\alpha h_0^2 \beta + 1} - 1 \right\}$$

Fig. 6はランド幅と平均油膜厚さとの計算結果である. ランド幅が増加するに従って平均油膜厚さも増加している. これはランド幅が増加するにつれ, フェーシング面圧が低下することと, 同一潤滑油流量でもフェーシングとドラムとの隙間に巻き込まれる油量が増加すること(h_oの増加)の相乗作用である.

Fig. 7はランド幅40mmのバンドブレーキで,バンドブレーキ作用力と平均油膜厚さとの関係について計算したものであり,バンドブレーキ作用力が低下すると急激に平均油膜厚さが増加することがわかる.

where Fs is the force applied by the band servo piston and R is the drum radius.

Substituting Eq. (3) into Eq. (4) and solving the resultant expression produces

$$\frac{dh}{d\theta} = -\frac{h^3 Fs}{4\eta L^3 R\omega} \tag{5}$$

Integrating Eq. (5) yields

$$h = \frac{1}{\sqrt{\alpha\theta + C}} \tag{6}$$

where =Fs/2 L3R and C is an integration constant. Letting h(0) = h0 (experimental value) denote the oil film thickness in the vicinity of the anchored end, the oil film thickness in the circumferential direction of the band brake h() can be determined with the following equation:

$$h(\theta) = \frac{h_0}{\sqrt{\alpha h_0^2 \theta + 1}} \tag{7}$$

In addition, the mean oil film thickness (hm) around the entire band in relation to the angle of contact () of the band brake is given by

$$hm = \frac{1}{\beta} \int_0^{\beta} hd \theta$$
$$= \frac{2}{\alpha \beta h_0} \left\{ \sqrt{\alpha h_0^2 \beta + 1} - 1 \right\}$$

Figure 6 shows the calculated results for the relationship between the band facing width and the mean oil film thickness. As the band facing width increases, the mean oil film thickness also increases. This is due to the combined effect of a decrease in facing contact pressure as the band facing width increases and an increase in the amount of oil (increase in h_0) drawn into the clearance between the facing and drum at the same oil flow rate

Figure 7 shows the calculated results for the relationship between the force applied to the band brake and the mean oil film thickness for a band brake with a 40-mm-wide facing. The results indicate that the mean oil film thickness increases sharply when the force applied to the band brake is reduced.

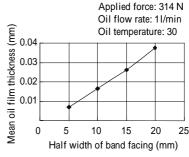


Fig. 6 Relationship between facing width and mean oil film thickness (calculated)

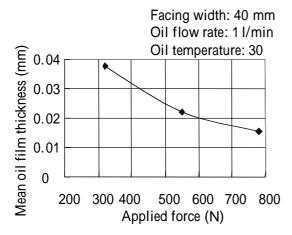


Fig. 7 Relationship between mean oil film thickness and applied force (calculated)

4. バンドブレーキ解放特性解析

4.1.バンドブレーキ解放時の挙動観察

バンドブレーキ締結状態で,ドラムをディエナージ方向に約200rpm回転させた状態から,バンドブレーキ締結力を解放した直後のバンドブレーキの挙動を観察した. Table 4に実験条件を示す.バンドストラップ周上3箇所にマーカピンを立て,マーカピンの移動をビデオで記録してバンドブレーキの挙動を解析した.

Fig.8に実験装置の概略を示す.なおバンドブレーキ解放直後の引きずりトルクの時系列変化も同時に測定した.解放特性が良くないバンドブレーキについてバンド解放直後の挙動は以下のようになっていることが明らかになった.

Table 4 Test conditions

Drum rotational speed	230		
during band engagement	230 rpm		
Drum rotational direction	de-energizing		
Applied pressure	0.2 Mpa		
Oil flow rate	2 l/min		
	Step 1: Full engagement		
	Exposure time: 20sec		
	Step 2: Engagement at drum		
Measurement pattern	rotational speed of 230 rpm		
	Exposure time: 6 sec		
	Step 3: Disengagement		
	Exposure time: 10 sec		

4. Analysis of Band Brake Disengagement Characteristics

4.1. Observation of band brake disengagement behavior

An observation was made of band brake behavior after the force applied to the band brake was released under a condition where the drum was rotating in the deenergizing direction at a speed of approximately 200 rpm with the band brake engaged. The test conditions are summarized in Table 4. Marker pins were attached at three locations around the band strap. Their movement was recorded with a video camera in order to analyze band brake behavior.

The test rig used is shown schematically in Fig. 8. A time history of the change in drag torque following band brake disengagement was also measured simultaneously. This analysis made clear that the following characteristics typify the post-disengagement behavior of a band brake with poor disengagement performance.

- (1) The band brake remains in contact with the drum and moves in its direction of rotation following release of the engaging force.
- (2) As a result, the bracket at the anchored end of the band brake comes loose from the anchor bolts, increasing the clearance between the band brake and drum in the vicinity of the anchored end.
- (3) Under that condition, the drag torque of the band brake is around 5 N-m, which is larger than usual.
- (4) By the time the drag torque returns to its usual level (approximately 2 N-m), the bracket at the anchored end has moved slightly in the opposite direction of drum rotation, and the clearance between the band brake and drum has increased from the anchored end to a point more than 90 °around the circumference of the band.

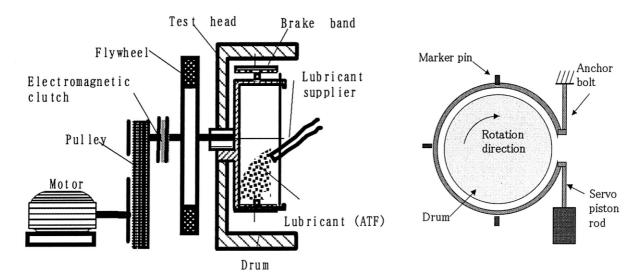


Fig. 8 Test rig for investigating of the band release characteristics

- (1) バンドブレーキの締結力を解放すると,バンドブレーキはドラムに巻き付いたままドラム回転方向に移動する.
- (2) その結果,バンドブレーキアンカー端部ブラケットは,アンカーボルトからはずれて,アンカー端部付近のバンドブレーキとドラムとの隙間が増加する.
- (3)以上の状態では,バンドブレーキ引きずりトルクは5Nm程度で通常より大きい.
- (4)通常のドラグトルク(約2Nm以下)状態になるときは、アンカー端部のブラケットがドラム回転方向とは逆方向にわずかに移動するとともに、アンカー端部から周方向90度以上離れた部分まで、バンドブレーキとドラム間の隙間が増加する。

4.2. バンドブレーキ解放時のバンド・ドラム間油膜 圧力測定

バンドブレーキ周方向3位置(約90度等分)で, バンド幅方向各2点(フェーシングの中央),合計6 箇所についてバンド・ドラム間の油膜圧力を測定 した.Fig.9は油膜圧力の測定箇所を示したもので あり,Fig.10はバンドブレーキ解放直後の各測定位 置における油膜圧力の測定結果である.

油膜圧力が負圧である領域は,バンドブレーキのサーボピストン側端部から180度付近の点で油膜に負圧が発生し,270度の点で負圧が最大になることがわかった.従って,バンドブレーキ解放直後に引きずリトルクが発生する原因は,この油膜部の負圧であると推定できる.

4.2. Measurement of oil film pressure between band and drum at band brake disengagement

The oil film pressure between the band and drum was measured at two points in the center of the band facing at three places, spaced at equal intervals of approximately 90°, around the circumference of the band brake, making a total of six measurement locations. Figure 9 shows the locations where the oil film pressure was measured. The oil film pressure measured at each location upon disengagement of the band brake is plotted in Fig. 10. A region of negative oil film pressure begins at a point approximately 180° from the end of the band brake on the servo piston side and the maximum negative pressure occurs at 270°. Accordingly, it is inferred that the negative oil film pressure in this region causes drag torque following disengagement of the band brake.

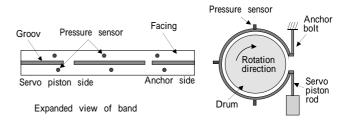


Fig. 9 Arrangement of the pressure sensors

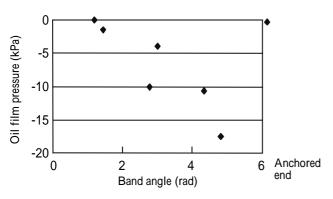


Fig. 10 Oil film pressure distribution

5. まとめ

- (1)バンドブレーキ締結初期の摩擦特性は,バンド・ドラム間の油膜厚さの影響を受け,フェーシングランド幅が狭いほど,また油溝本数が多いほど安定した μ-V特性となる.
- (2)バンドブレーキ締結初期のバンド・ドラム間の油膜厚さは,無限小幅近似のレイノルズ方程式を適用して推定できる.
- (3)バンドブレーキ解放直後の過大な引きずりトルクの原因は、アンカー部に近い領域における油膜部の負圧であることが推定できる。

謝辞

本研究にあたっては,日産自動車株式会社動力環境研究所 山崎努様,日産自動車研究実験試作部 赤坂量康様をはじめ多数の皆様に多大のご指導・ご協力をいただきました.ここに深く感謝いたします.

参考文献

- 1) 森ほか:自動変速機用バンドブレーキの摩擦特性と耐久性に関する一考察,自動車技術会1994年秋季大会前刷集 No.944(1994)
- 2)加藤ほか:自動変速機の多板クラッチ及びバンドブレーキ摩擦面の油膜挙動解析,自動車技術会論文集 Vol.26, No.1 (1995) 63-67.

5. Conclusions

- (1) Friction characteristics in the initial period of band brake engagement are influenced by the oil film thickness between the band and drum. A more stable μ-V characteristic is obtained with a narrower band facing width and with a larger number of oil grooves.
- (2) The oil film thickness between the band and drum in the initial period of band brake engagement can be estimated with a Reynolds equation for approximating an infinitesimal width.
- (3) It can be inferred that the negative film pressure in a region near the anchored end is the cause of excessive drag torque right after band brake disengagement.

Acknowledgments

The author would like to thank T. Yamazaki at Nissan Motor Co.'s Powertrain and Environment Research Laboratory, R. Akasaka at Nissan Motor Co.'s Testing and Technical Service Department and numerous other individuals for their invaluable advice and cooperation in connection with this research.

References

- (1) M. Mori, et al., "Research on the Friction Characteristics and Durability of the Band Brake for Automatic Transmissions," Preprint of JSAE Autumn 1994 Conference, No. 944 (1994) (in Japanese).
- (2) Y. Kato, et al., "Analysis of Oil Film Behavior on the Friction Surfaces of a Multiplate Clutch and Band Brake in an Automatic Transmission," Transactions of JSAE, Vol. 26, No. 1 (1995, 63-67 (in Japanese).

Author



Yoshiaki KATO

音響ホログラフィによるベルトノイズ放射音解析

Acoustic Holography Analysis of Radiation Noise Caused by CVT Belt Noise

横山 嘉昭* 板谷 洋*

青木 義徳*

留雄* 井富

Yoshiaki YOKOYAMA

Hiroshi ITAYA

Yoshinori AOKI

Tomeo ITOMI

抄 録 FF車用スチールベルト式CVTの開発に際して, 騒音振動性能開発でATと異なるのはCVTの中心的な部 品であるCVTベルトにより発生するベルトノイズであ る.このベルトノイズは高周波であり,CVTのミッショ ンケース(以下T/Mケース)の発音部位は局所的である. ユニット開発期間を短縮するには, 開発初期段階でベル トノイズの発音部位を精度良く見極めることが必要とな っている.この課題を克服するために,音響ホログラフ ィの適用を試みた.その結果, T/Mケースの発音部位を 正確に特定し、短期間で適切に改善することができた、 ここでは,その試験装置,計測方法,適用実験結果につ いて紹介する.

Summary In developing the noise and vibration performance of a steel-belt CVT for front-wheel-drive cars, one aspect that differs from ordinary ATs is the noise caused by the steel belt that is a core component of the transmission. High-frequency noise induced by the CVT belt is radiated locally from the transmission case. In the early stage of CVT development, it is necessary to identify the source of such noise accurately in order to shorten the development period. We applied acoustic holography to address this issue. As a result, the noise source on the CVT case was accurately identified and effective improvements were implemented quickly. This paper describes the experimental apparatus and measurement method used and the experimental results obtained.

1. まえがき

FF車用スチールベルト式CVTのベルトは, VDT 社(Van Doorne's Transmissie b.v.)製を使用しており 約400枚のエレメントと2列のリングで構成されて いる.このCVTベルトの噛合いによって生じるベ ルトノイズは,エレメント枚数が多いことから噛 合い次数が高く,20~30km/hでも約4kHzという高 周波のノイズとなり、車室内での騒音問題になり やすい.

ベルトノイズで重要となるのはベルト単体起振 力とトランスミッション感度である,ベルト単体 起振力に関しては単体振動特性評価が可能となっ ており、ベルト単体の影響を確認することができ る。1)

トランスミッション感度はベルトノイズが高周 波であるため,T/Mケースの形状に起因する膜振動 の影響を大きく受けるだけでなく,発音部位がケ - ス表面上の局所的に存在するという問題がある. ユニット開発期間を短縮していくためには,短期 間で発音部位を的確に把握し、その部位を効果的 に対策することが必要となっている.

しかしながら、今までの評価においてはトラン スミッション近傍の放射音を評価点のみで測定を していたため放射部位の特定ができなかった.

1. Introduction

Belts made by Van Doorne's Transmissie b.v. (VDT) are used in steel-belt CVTs fitted on front-wheel-drive cars. The CVT belt consists of two sets of steel bands to which approximately 400 steel elements are attached. The meshing of the belt gives rise to high-frequency noise at approximately 4 kHz even in a vehicle speed range of 20-30 km/h, with high meshing orders due to the large number of elements. This noise tends to become a problem in the vehicle interior.

Key aspects of this belt-induced noise are the excitation force of the belt itself and CVT case sensitivity. With regard to the former aspect, the vibration characteristics of the belt alone can be evaluated, making it possible to confirm the influence of the belt itself on noise.(1)

Transmission case sensitivity is greatly influenced by membrane vibrations originating from the case geometry owing to the high frequency of belt noise. A further problem is the fact that the case surface acts as a local noise source. In order to shorten CVT development lead time, it is necessary to identify noise sources quickly and to apply effective control measures at those places.

However, based only on radiation noise measurements made at locations close to the transmission, it has not been possible to identify noise sources accurately in evaluations performed previously.

Experiment Department

^{*}実験部

また、対策検討はFEM解析および過去の経験等により、対策品を試作し、実験により効果検証を実施していた。この場合、充分な効果がえられない場合もあり、その場合は再度検討、試作、検証を行なうため時間がかかる。これは発音部位の特定が充分にできていないためであり、効率を上げるためには発音部位の精度良い特定が必要不可欠である。ここでは、発音部位の特定に有効と考えられる音響ホログラフィによる放射音解析について従来手法である音響インテンシティと理論的に対比し、さらにそれを適用した実験結果について述べる。

2. 音響計測技術について

2.1. 音響インテンシティ

Fig. 1に音響インテンシティの測定概略図を示す.マイク間距離dの2つのマイクにおいてMic Aに到達した音の波面がある時間差をおいてMic Bに達し,その時間差情報を利用して音の進向方向の判断とマイク軸への大きさ成分を計算する.Mic Aでの音圧が $p_{_{2}}(t)$ であるとき,粒子速度 (t)と音圧の平均値p(t)はそれぞれ式(1),(2)のように表される.ここで は空気密度である.

$$v(t) = \frac{-1}{\rho d} \int (p_2(t) - p_1(t))dt$$
 (1)

$$p(t) = \frac{p_1(t) + p_2(t)}{2} \tag{2}$$

音響インテンシティ/は式(3)に示すように音圧 平均値と粒子速度を掛け合わせ時間平均すること で求められる.

$$I = \overline{p(t)v(t)} \tag{3}$$

音響インテンシティにより,発音部位の特定は可能となるが,以下の問題点があった.

- (1)音響インテンシティを計測できる2マイクロホン法は粒子速度を音圧の差に基づいて近似しているため測定精度は必ずしも高いとはいえない.
- (2)測定結果を使用して,音圧分布等の計算予測手 法への適用ができない.

Moreover, studies of noise control measures have involved the building of prototype units incorporating improvements based largely on finite element analysis (FEA) results and prior experience. Such units have then undergone testing to verify the effectiveness of the modifications. In some cases, sufficient noise reduction effects have not been obtained, thus requiring additional time for re-examination, building of prototype units again and further verification testing. This is all attributable to an inability to identify noise sources with sufficient accuracy. Accurate identification of noise sources is therefore indispensable to increasing development work efficiency. Radiation noise was analyzed in this study by acoustic holography, a technique thought to be effective in identifying noise sources. This technique is compared here theoretically with the conventional acoustic intensity method, and the experimental results obtained with acoustic holography are also described.

2. Acoustic Measurement Techniques

2.1. Acoustic intensity

The concept of acoustic intensity measurement is illustrated schematically in Fig. 1. Two microphones are separated by a distance d. An acoustic wave front that arrives at microphone A reaches microphone B at a certain time difference. By using that time difference information, the direction of sound propagation can be judged and the magnitude of the sound component along the microphone axis can be calculated. Letting $p_1(t)$ and $p_2(t)$ denote the sound pressure at microphones A and B, respectively, the particle velocity (t) and average sound pressure p(t) can be given by Eqs. (1) and (2), where indicates the air density.

$$v(t) = \frac{-1}{\rho d} \int (p_2(t) - p_1(t)) dt$$
 (1)

$$p(t) = \frac{p_1(t) + p_2(t)}{2} \tag{2}$$

As shown in Eq. (3), acoustic intensity I is found by multiplying the average sound pressure and the particle velocity and taking a time-averaged value.

$$I = p(t)v(t) \tag{3}$$

Although noise sources can be identified on the basis of acoustic intensity measurements, the following problems have occurred.

- (1) The two-microphone method of measuring acoustic intensity does not necessarily provide high measurement accuracy because the particle velocity is approximated on the basis of sound pressure differences.
- (2) The measured results cannot be applied to computational prediction of the sound pressure distribution or other similar quantities.

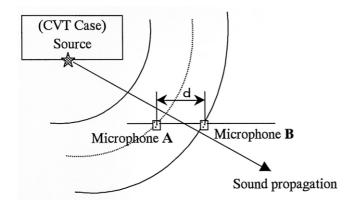


Fig. 1 Acoustic intensity measurement

2.2. 音響ホログラフィ

これに対し、音響ホログラフィは1つのリファレンスマイクと測定面内に多数のマイクを配置する方式を取っており、近似処理を含まない高精度の計測技術である.放射体の近接音場(測定面内)における音響情報をホログラムとして計測し、2次元空間フーリエ変換により空間周波数領域(K空間)で信号処理し、その結果を逆フーリエ変換して放射体の振動状態を可視化する方法である.Fig. 2に測定概略図を示す.マイク間距離d、マイク・ホログラム面間距離Dは式(4)、(5)で与えられる.

$$d = \frac{\lambda_{\min}}{2} = \frac{c}{2f_{\max}} \tag{4}$$

$$d \le D \le 2d \tag{5}$$

ここでcは音速 , f_{max} は測定最大周波数である .

各測定点で得られた{音圧,時間}データを各サンプリング時点における{音圧,測定面}データに変換したものが音圧ホログラムである.これを2次元空間フーリエ変換したものを音圧ホログラムのK空間表示と呼ぶ.これらに速度伝搬子をかけて測定面から振動面まで後方伝搬させ,振動面での速度ホログラムのK空間表示を得る.また,振動面の速度は式(6)から再構成できる?

$$v_{n}(x, y, z') = F^{-1} [P(k_{x}, k_{y}, z)G_{y}^{B}(k_{x}, k_{y}, z - z')]$$
 (6)

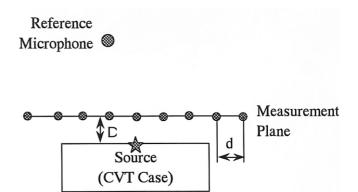


Fig. 2 Acoustic holography measurement

2.2. Acoustic holography

In contrast, acoustic holography is a highly accurate measurement technique that does not include any approximations. This method involves the use of one reference microphone and several microphones placed in the measurement plane. Acoustic information in a sound field (measurement plane) near an acoustic radiator is measured as a hologram. The signal is processed in the spatial frequency domain (k-space) by means of the two-dimensional Fourier transform, and the result undergoes an inverse Fourier transform operation to visualize the vibration state of the radiator. A schematic of the measurement concept is shown in Fig. 2. The distance between the microphones d and the distance between the microphones and the hologram surface (noise source) D are given by Eqs. (4) and (5), respectively.

$$d = \frac{\lambda_{\min}}{2} = \frac{c}{2f_{\max}} \tag{4}$$

$$d \le D \le 2d \tag{5}$$

where c is the speed of sound and fmax is the maximum measured frequency.

An acoustic hologram is obtained by converting {sound pressure and time} data obtained at each measurement point to {sound pressure and measurement plane} data at each sampling point. This is subjected to a two-dimensional space Fourier transform operation, which results in what is called a k-space representation of the acoustic hologram. A velocity propagator is then applied to propagate the representation in the reverse direction from the measurement plane to the vibration plane, which results in a k-space representation of a velocity hologram at the vibration plane. The velocity at the vibration plane can be reconstructed from Eq. (6).⁽²⁾

$$v_n(x, y, z') = F^{-1}[P(k_x, k_y, z)G_v^B(k_x, k_y, z - z')]$$
 (6)

これが音響ホログラフィの基本式である .ここで F^1 は逆フーリエ変換 , G^3 は後方伝搬に関する速度伝搬子 ,Pは音圧である .

平板からの振動放射に関するK空間ホログラムを 前方伝搬させれば,測定面以外も含めた任意の場 の音圧,粒子速度,音響パワー,インテンシティ が求まる.

3.ベルトノイズへの適用実験

3.1. 実験の流れ

まず,T/M近傍の評価点にて現状のベルトノイズ 放射音を測定した.周波数特性より各ピーク周波 数のレベルを確認し,問題周波数を特定した.

Fig. 3に示すように,リファレンスマイク1本と計測用マイク数本により構成されるスタンバイにて音響ホログラフィ計を実施,問題周波数域における発音部位の特定を行なった.その後,発音部位への対策仕様品を検討試作し,現状と対策品の測定結果を比較し,その効果を確認した.

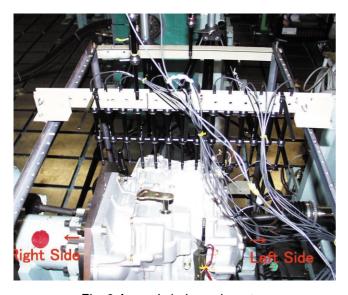


Fig. 3 Acoustic holography setup

3.2. 実験結果

現状の測定結果からベルトノイズは4.2kHz付近に 大きなピークを持っていることがわかる(Fig. 4). このピークでの音響ホログラフィを実施した. This expression is the fundamental equation of acoustic holography, where F⁻¹ is the inverse Fourier transform, GnB is the velocity propagator for reverse propagation and P is the sound pressure.

If a k-space hologram of vibration radiated from a flat plate is propagated in the forward direction, it is possible to find the sound pressure, particle velocity, sound power and acoustic intensity at any arbitrary point, including locations outside the measurement plane.

3. Experimental Application to CVT Belt-induced Noise

3.1. Flow of experimental work

As the first step, the level of radiation noise induced by the steel belt with the present case was measured at a measurement point near the CVT. Based on the frequency characteristics, the level of each peak frequency was confirmed and the problem frequency was identified.

An acoustic holography measurement was then made using an experimental setup consisting of one reference microphone and several measurement microphones, as shown in Fig. 3. The noise source in the problem frequency range was identified on that basis. A CVT case incorporating a measure to suppress noise at that location was then examined and built. Measurements were then made for the original case and the improved case to confirm the effectiveness of the modification made.

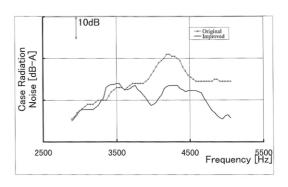


Fig. 4 Belt-induced noise in motor dynamometer

3.2. Experimental results

The measured results for the original CVT case showed that belt-induced radiation noise displayed a large peak in the vicinity of 4.2 kHz (Fig. 4). An acoustic holography measurement was then made at that peak frequency.

計測面での音圧マップ(Fig. 5)では数箇所のレベルが大きい部位(赤い部分)が存在していて音源が特定できない.しかし,インテンシティマップ(Fig. 6)およびベクトルマップ(Fig. 7)を組み合せた結果より,ケース中央部のポイントに絞り込まれ,音源が精度良く特定されている.



Fig. 5 Sound pressure map of measurement plane (original)

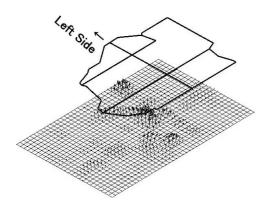


Fig. 7 Vector map of measurement plane (original)

さらに、音響ホログラフィの高い能力の一つである、計測面の結果から任意の場の音圧を求めることにより音源の探索を試みた、計測面結果から測定対象物表面まで近づけた音圧マップ(Fig. 8)を計算させると、インテンシティマップと同様にケース中央部に音源が絞り込むことができた。

これらの結果より発音源はケース中央部と推定 し、ケース中央部に対策を施した試作品を作成し 効果を確認した. In the sound pressure map of the measurement plane in Fig. 5, several places (indicated in red) show a high sound pressure level, making it impossible to identify the noise source. However, as a result of combining this map with the intensity map (Fig. 6) and the vector map (Fig. 7) of the measurement plane, it was possible to narrow the location down to the center of the case and to identify the noise source with good accuracy.



Fig. 6 Intensity map of measurement plane (original)

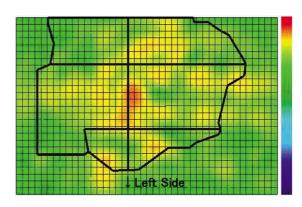


Fig. 8 Calculated sound pressure map of case surface (original)

An attempt was then made to probe the noise source further by finding the sound pressure at arbitrary locations based on the measurement plane results. This is one of the outstanding capabilities of acoustic holography. From the measurement plane results, a sound pressure map was calculated up to the surface of the CVT case (Fig. 8). That allowed the noise source to be pinpointed in the center of the case, as was done with the intensity map.

Having inferred from the results that the noise source was in the center of the case, a prototype case was built in which a noise control measure was applied to the case center.

その結果,対策品でのベルトノイズは4.2kHz付近のレベルが改善された(Fig. 4). また,インテンシティマップ(Fig. 9)およびベクトルマップ(Fig. 10)での確認でもケース中央部に存在していた発音源が消失していることが解る.

このように音響ホログラフィによって発音部位が精度良く特定でき,適確な対策が可能になった.

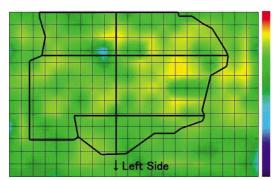


Fig. 9 Intensity map of measurement plane (improved)

4. まとめ

CVTベルトノイズのような高周波での放射音問題において、音響ホログラフィの測定面内外における任意の場での音圧、インテンシティ(強度、ベクトル)等の計算予測機能を使用することにより、T/Mケース表面の発音部位を精度良く特定することができ、迅速および適確に対策ができるようになった・

最後に,支えてくださった多くの方々に深く感謝の意を表します.

参考文献

- 1)横山 嘉昭,有賀 浩一: CVTベルトノイズ評価技術について, JATCO TransTechnology Review, 創刊号, pp. 50-53(2000)
- 2)吉川 茂:振動と音の可視化技術としての近距離場音響ホログラフィ,日本音響学会誌,52巻, 12号,pp.997-1004(1996)

As a result, the belt-induced noise level measured for the prototype case was improved in the vicinity of 4.2 kHz (Fig. 4.). An intensity map (Fig. 9) and a vector map (Fig. 10) of the measurement plane for the improved case also confirmed that the noise source previously seen in the center of the case had been eliminated.

Thus, acoustic holography made it possible to identify the noise source accurately and to implement an effective measure to remove it.

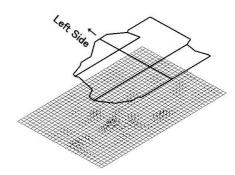


Fig. 10 Vector map of measurement plane (improved)

4. Conclusion

Acoustic holography was applied to address noise induced by the steel CVT belt, representing a problem of high-frequency radiation noise. This technique facilitates computational prediction of sound pressure, intensity and vector maps and other quantities at arbitrary locations in and outside the measurement plane. As a result, it was possible to identify accurately the noise source on the surface of the CVT case and to make a suitable improvement quickly.

Finally, the authors would like to thank many individuals for their invaluable support in connection with this work.

References

- (1) Y. Yokoyama and K. Ariga, "Techniques for Evaluating CVT Belt Noise," Jatco TransTechnology Review, inaugural issue, pp. 50-53, (2000).
- (2) S. Yoshikawa, "Near-field Acoustic Holography as a Vibration and Noise Visualization Technique," Journal of the Acoustical Society of Japan, Vol. 52, No. 12, pp. 997-1004, (1996) (in Japanese).

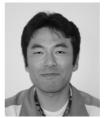
Authors



Yoshiaki YOKOYAMA



Hiroshi ITAYA



Yoshinori AOKI



Tomeo ITOMI

トロイダルCVTの燃費向上に関する考察

Improvement of Toroidal CVT Fuel Economy

日比 利文*

住 泰夫*

竹内 徹*

Toshifumi HIBI

Yasuo SUMI

Tohru TAKEUCHI

抄 録 当社では,1999年世界に先駆けてトロイダル CVTを実用化した.トロイダルCVTは,滑らかでレスポンスの良い運転性や高い燃費性能で好評を博している.

本稿では、限られた大きさの中でトロイダルCVTの 変速比幅を拡大するとともに、さらに燃費を向上させ る手法についてATと比較しながら考察した。 **Summary** JATCO was the first in the world to implement a toroidal continuously variable transmission (CVT) on a production vehicle in 1999. Toroidal CVTs have been highly acclaimed by users for their smooth, responsive driveability and excellent fuel economy.

This paper describes the approach taken to expand the shift ratio range of a toroidal CVT within the limited size allowed. It also discusses a method for improving fuel economy further in comparison with conventional ATs.

1.はじめに

無段変速機(CVT)は,燃費性能に優れた特性を有する.特にトロイダルCVTは,大排気量車への適用が可能であり,大排気量車の燃費向上を実現できる.

本稿では、すでに商品化しているJR006E型トロイダルCVTをベースとし、バリエータ部の諸元変更による将来のトロイダルCVTの燃費向上の可能性について考察した。

2. バリエータ部の諸元検討

本章では,燃費向上を目的としたバリエータ部の諸元検討について述べる.(Fig. 1参照)

伝達効率を良くすれば,当然ながら燃費は向上できる.また変速比幅を大きく取ればエンジン回転数を低く抑えることができ,燃費向上が期待できる.

しかしながら,バリエータの断面形状はFR車への搭載性から制約を受け,その制約条件下では伝達効率の向上と変速比幅の拡大とは相反関係にある.

そこで,断面形状に制約を加えたうえで,伝達 効率と変速比幅とがどのような相関にあるのかを 求めるパラメータスタディを実施した.

1. Introduction

One feature of CVTs is their outstanding fuel economy. The toroidal CVT in particular can be applied to cars with a large-displacement engine, making it possible to improve their fuel economy further.

This paper describes the potential for further improving the fuel economy of future CVTs by changing the specifications of the variator. The unit described here is based on our JR006E toroidal CVT that has already been commercialized.

2. Specification Analysis of Variator Unit

In this chapter, we will show future possibilities discussing specification analysis of the variator unit considering improving fuel economy.

Obviously fuel economy will be improved if the variator's efficiency is increased. We can expect better fuel economy with wide ratio coverage because of the low engine rotation speed. Unfortunately, the wide ratio coverage and high efficiency is incompatible if we design the variator with the limited cross section size that is decided by the vehicle design.

^{*}第四商品開発グループ

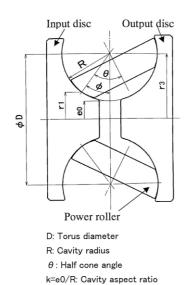


Fig. 1 Half-toroidal type variator

2.1. 検討の前提

- 1)設計トラクション係数は,商品化しているトロイダルCVTに対して5%程度の性能向上とする
- 2)トラクション面の限界接触面圧は,商品化しているトロイダルCVTに対して5%程度の向上とする
- 現在商品化しているトロイダルCVTと同じく ダブルキャビティタイプとする
- 4)トーラス直径は,商品化しているトロイダル CVTと同じく 132mmとする
- 5)入力ディスク径は,商品化しているトロイダ ルCVTと同じく 155mmとする
- 6)出力ディスク径は、商品化しているトロイダ ルCVTと同じく 158mmとする
- 7) 最大トルク450Nmのエンジンへの適用とする

FR車両への搭載性がダブルキャビティタイプトロイダルCVTの特長の一つであり,この特長を活かすため,半径方向に制約を与えたトーラス形状とした.

もし,軸方向長さが重要であるならば,キャビ ティ半径に制約を設ける必要がある.

2.2. 諸元検討方法

バリエータ諸元の3大要素は,トーラス直径,キャビティ半径,パワーローラ開き角である.今回の検討ではトーラス直径を 132mmに固定し,キャビティ半径R0を40mmから48mmとして,トーラス直径が 132mmとなるようにキャビティアスペクト比kを決定した.そこで各キャビティ半径毎に,パワーローラ開き角 をパラメータとして許容しうる変速比幅を求める.

以上の方法で各諸元毎に取り得る変速比幅をまとめたものをTable 1に示す.

We will show you one result of parameter study to indicate the relationship between ratio coverage and the variator's efficiency with limited cross section size.

2.1. Condition of the study

- 1) Design traction coefficient value is 5% higher than current marketed unit.
- 2) Design maximum contact pressure is 5% higher than current model.
- 3) Concept of the unit is dual cavity same as current model.
- 4) Torus diameter is 132mm same as current model.
- 5) Input disc diameter is 155 mm same as current model.
- 6) Output disc diameter is 158mm same as current model.
- 7) Transmission maximum input torque is 450 Nm.

As the dual cavity toroidal CVT is suitable for rear wheel drive vehicles, size limit is considered mainly for cross section direction. If we have to consider axis direction length, the cavity radius should be one of the conditions.

2.2. Process of specification analysis

The 3 biggest numbers to decide the variator specifications are torus diameter, cavity radius and the half cone angle. At first, in this study the torus diameter was fixed at 132mm. We changed the cavity radius from R40mm to R48mm. The cavity aspect ratio k was automatically decided. Then the half cone angle was changed as a parameter for each cavity radius. We can get a maximum ratio coverage according to the aforementioned conditions. Table 3 indicates calculation results for each cavity radius and the half cone angle.

Half cone angle (deg.) Cavity radius R(mm) Cavity aspect ratio k 57 57.5 58 58.5 59 59.5 60.5 61 61.5 62 62.5 60 0.65 4.848 4.867 4.873 4.891 4.899 4.905 4.802 4.703 4.606 4,499 4.396 4.293 5.176 5.201 5.102 4.978 4.755 4.639 4.528 41 0.6098 5.155 5.182 5.206 5.214 4.871 0.5714 5.462 5.485 5.490 5,484 5.229 5.110 4.983 4.736 42 5.335 5.457 5.362 4.857 43 0.5349 5.213 5.331 5.463 5.587 5.713 5.778 5.698 5.566 5.421 5.281 5.143 5.010 44 0.5 5.166 5.282 5.414 5.549 5.687 5.814 5.869 5.862 5.763 5.607 5.454 5.306 45 0.4667 5.072 5.198 5.327 5.461 5.597 5.735 5.880 5.947 5.918 5.904 5.874 5.695 46 0.4348 5.091 5.230 5.361 5.508 5.646 5.787 5.931 5.995 5.975 5.954 | 5.933 | 5.898 47 0.4043 4.870 | 5.004 | 5.141 5.283 | 5.429 | 5.564 | 5.718 | 5.862 | 6.010 | 5.983 | 5.955 | 5.929 48 0.375 4.542 | 4.667 | 4.807 | 4.940 | 5.077 | 5.219 | 5.363 | 5.512 | 5.667 | 5.810 | 5.971 | 5.938

Table 1 Ratio coverage at each specification

Table 2 Maximum spin at each specification

1		Half cone angle (deg.)											
Cavity radius R(mm)	Cavity aspect ratio k	57	57.5	58	58.5	59	59.5	60	60.5	61	61.5	62	62.5
40	0.65	0.1208	0.1345	0.1481	0.1617	0.1752	0.1887	0.2021	0.2154	0.2287	0.2420	0.2552	0.2684
41	0.6098	0.1469	0.1601	0.1733	0.1863	0.1994	0.2123	0.2253	0.2382	0.2510	0.2638	0.2766	0.2894
42	0.5714	0.1719	0.1846	0.1973	0.2099	0.2224	0.2350	0.2475	0.2599	0.2723	0.2847	0.2970	0.3094
43	0.5349	0.1956	0.2078	0.2201	0.2322	0.2444	0.2565	0.2685	0.2806	0.2925	0.3045	0.3164	0.3284
44	0.5	0.2183	0.2301	0.2419	0.2536	0.2653	0.2770	0.2887	0.3003	0.3119	0.3235	0.3350	0.3465
45	0.4667	0.2399	0.2513	0.2627	0.2740	0.2854	0.2966	0.3079	0.3191	0.3303	0.3415	0.3527	0.3639
46	0.4348	0.2606	0.2716	0.2826	0.2936	0.3045	0.3154	0.3263	0.3372	0.3480	0.3589	0.3697	0.3805
47	0.4043	0.2804	0.2911	0.3017	0.3123	0.3228	0.3334	0.3439	0.3544	0.3649	0.3754	0.3859	0.3963
48	0.375	0.2994	0.3097	0.3200	0.3302	0.3405	0.3507	0.3608	0.3710	0.3812	0.3913	0.4015	0.4116

次に,各諸元毎のバリエータのスピンを求めた. トロイダル型バリエータの損失は,主にスピンロスとパワーローラベアリング部のロスであるが,後者は諸元変更によって劇的に変化することはない.よってトロイダル型バリエータの伝達効率の代用値としてスピンを用いることが可能であると判断した.

スピンはキャビティアスペクト比 k とパワーローラ開き角 , および傾転角によって決まるが , バリエータ部変速比1で生じる最大スピンによって全変速範囲の伝達効率の優劣がほぼ判断できる . 各諸元毎の最大スピンをTable 2に示す .

2.3. 諸元検討結果

前項で求めた各諸元毎の変速比幅と最大スピンの相関をFig. 2に示す.

この図からわかるように,トーラス直径を固定した場合キャビティ半径R0を大きくすると変速比幅は大きくとることが可能となるが,最大スピンが大きくなって伝達効率が悪化する.

今回の検討で設けた前提では,変速比幅5.8以上を得ようとすると急激にスピンが大きくなること,スピンを犠牲にしても変速比幅6程度が限界であることもわかる.

またそれぞれのキャビティ半径R0において,パワーローラ開き角を変えると,変速比幅が最大

Then we calculated spin magnitude at the contact point between power roller and disc. It is well known that losses at the variator consists mainly of spin losses at contact points and power roller thrust bearing losses. As the latter one does not change dramatically, we focus on the spin losses. We can evaluate the variator's efficiency with spin magnitude. The spin magnitude can be calculated with cavity aspect ratio, half cone angle and attitude angle. As maximum spin is generated at 1:1 variator ratio, we may observe it to represent the variator's overall efficiency. Table 2 shows maximum spin magnitude at 1:1 variator ratio.

2.3. Results of the study

Figure 2 shows calculation results. The maximum spin magnitude at each ratio coverage is indicated with the parameter cavity radius. As you can see in figure 2, with a fixed torus diameter, a large cavity radius can provide wide ratio coverage. On the other hand, spin losses were increased by the large cavity radius.

In the condition that we have set, if we want a wider ratio coverage than 5.8, the spin losses increase exponentially. Even if we accept high spin losses, there is a barrier at 6.0.

となる が存在することがわかる.キャビティ半径R0によって変速比幅と最大スピンとの相関が異なる理由は,変速比幅を制約する要因が面圧であったり,接触点半径であったりするためである.

今回の目的から考え、それぞれのキャビティ半径で変速比幅を最も大きくとれる諸元を最良であると判断して、Table 3に示す各諸元を選定した.

We can observe the best half cone angle that obtains the widest ratio spread for each cavity radius with fixed torus diameter. The reason why the shapes of the curves are different to each other is because of the conditions that limit the ratio spread. The conditions are contact pressure in some cases and limitation of the radius of contact point in other cases. We pick up the specifications that can achieve the widest ratio spread. Table 3 is the summary of the calculations to pick up the best specifications at each cavity radius.

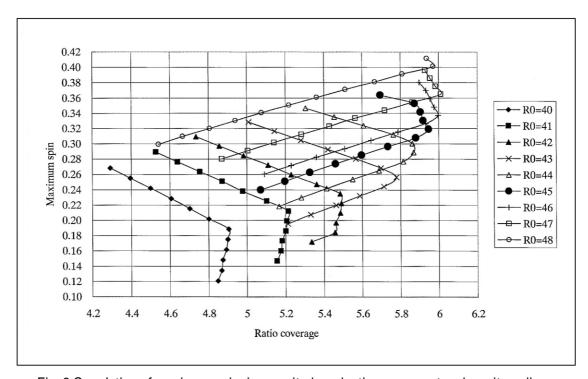


Fig. 2 Correlation of maximum spinnig magnitude and ratio coverage at each cavity radius

No.	Torus diameter (mm)	Cavity radius R0 (mm)	Cavity aspect ratio k	Half cone angle (deg.)	Ratio coverage
1	φ 132	40	0.65	59.5	4.905
2	φ 132	41	0.6098	59.5	5.214
3	φ 132	42	0.5714	59	5.490
4	φ 132	43	0.5349	59.5	5.778
5	φ 132	44	0.5	60	5.869
6	φ 132	45	0.4667	60.5	5.947
7	φ 132	46	0.4348	60.5	5.995
8	φ 132	47	0.4043	61	6.010
9	φ 132	48	0.375	62	5.971

Table 3 Best specification at each cavity radius

2.4. 伝達効率の計算

前項で選定した9つの諸元について,それぞれ最 LOW,1:1,最HIGHの3つの変速比における入力トルク20~450Nmでのトラクションドライブの伝達効率とパワーローラベアリング部のロストルクを算出し,バリエータ部の伝達効率を求めた.代表例として諸元No.4のR0=43mmの計算結果をFig.3に示す.

今回の検討では,すべてのバリーエータ諸元においてパワーローラベアリングの諸元は固定している.パワーローラベアリング諸元を最適設計してもロストルクの低減代は,全ロストルクに比較して極めて小さいため,このような考え方で問題無いと判断した.

各諸元の入力回転数2000,4000,6000rpm,入力トルク450Nmでの伝達効率計算結果をTable 4に示す.

また入力回転数2000rpmでの伝達効率計算値と変速比幅との相関をFig. 4に変速比毎に示す.

変速比幅を大きくとろうとすると、どの変速比においても伝達効率が悪化し、とくにHIGH側ではその傾向が顕著に現れる、何故なら、変速比幅が小さい諸元では、HIGHでのスピンが0となる諸元が存在するのに対し、変速比幅を大きくするとスピンを0にできず、効率が悪くなるからである、なおLOW側では、面圧が前提とした値を越えるため、スピンを0とする傾転角まで傾転させることができていない。

次章では,ここで求めた変速比幅と伝達効率の 相関を用いて車両燃費への影響を検討する.

2.4. Variator's efficiency calculation result

We now calculate the variator's efficiency including power roller thrust bearing losses. The efficiency calculations are made from the following: low ratio, 1:1 ratio, high ratio and input torque(20Nm thru 450Nm). Figure 3 shows a typical result using a cavity radius of 43mm. As indicated by figure 3, high efficiency at a relatively low load, which is often used in normal driving is one of the features of this transmission.

In these calculations, the specification of the power roller is fixed, for example when the thrust forces increased the loss torque is increased. Technically the specification of the power roller design should be optimized. But, because the difference of the loss is very small, we can use the same specification for this calculation. Table 4 shows the variator's efficiency for 9 cases at 2000, 4000 and 6000rpm with a 450 Nm input. Figure 4 shows the efficiency curve at 2000rpm. When a wider ratio spread is required, the variator's efficiency gets worse. This is prominent at the high ratio position. Only with a narrow ratio spread at the high ratio position can zero spin be achieved. You may wonder why there is no zero spin point at the low ratio position. To prevent excessive contact pressure at the low ratio position we must not rotate the power roller to a geometrically low zero spin position.

In the next chapter we will discuss vehicle fuel economy using the above-mentioned result.

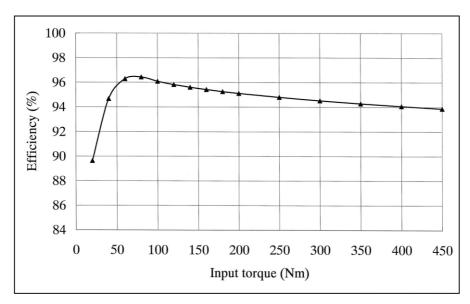
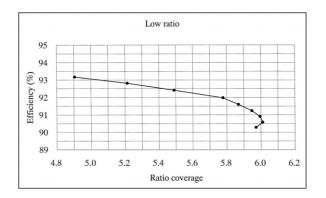
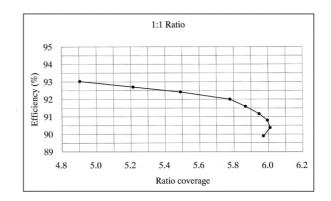


Fig. 3 Transmision efficiency of R = 43mm (2000rpm, High Ratio)





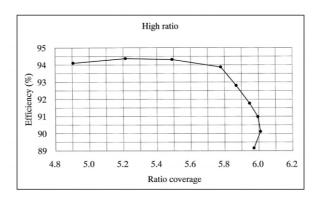


Fig. 4 Correlation of transmission efficiency and ratio coverage (2000rpm, 450Nm)

		Variator's efficiency (450Nm)								
		Nin=2000rpm			Nin=4000rpm			Nin=6000rpm		
No.	Ratio coverage	LOW	1:1	HIGH	LOW	1:1	HIGH	LOW	1:1	HIGH
1	4.905	93.17	93.03	94.10	93.46	93.30	94.39	93.66	93.51	94.60
2	5.214	92.82	92.70	94.37	93.00	93.00	94.65	93.21	93.23	94.86
3	5.490	92.41	92.42	94.32	92.70	92.74	94.60	92.91	92.99	94.81
4	5.778	91.98	92.00	93.88	92.28	92.36	94.16	92.51	92.64	94.35
5	5.869	91.60	91.59	92.80	91.92	92.00	93.12	92.17	92.31	93.35
6	5.947	91.24	91.17	91.77	91.60	91.63	92.17	91.87	91.98	92.48
7	5.995	90.91	90.79	90.98	91.30	91.29	91.47	91.59	91.67	91.83
8	6.010	90.58	90.37	90.11	91.02	90.92	90.70	91.34	91.34	91.14
9	5.971	90.28	89.89	89.16	90.77	90.51	89.88	91.13	90.97	90.42

Table 4 Calculation result of transmission efficiency

3. 有段変速機との燃費比較

車両のモード燃費を論議する場合,有段変速機(AT)においては変速段数より変速比幅の影響が大きいことは知られている.一方,変速比幅の増加により段間比が大きくなり,運転性が損なわれるようになるため,変速段数を増加する必要が生じてくる.CVTの場合は無段階で変速するため,かかる不具合は無い特徴があり,変速比幅は機構的に可能な値まで拡張することができる.

3. Fuel Economy Stepped AT & Toroidal CVT

It is well known that the variator ratio spread is more important than the number of gear steps when we discuss mode fuel economy. On the other hand, the more the variator ratio spread is increased the more the difference between two variator ratios is increased. Therefore the drive-ability deteriorates. Then the stepped AT needs to increase the number of gear steps to get good mode fuel economy. For the CVT, the ratio can be changed

前章で述べた如く,トロイダルCVTにおいても バリエータの変速比幅を6:1程度まで拡大するこ との可能性を示したが,一方,バリエータの伝達 効率は変速比幅のある値を超えると低下する傾向 にあることも示している.従って,トロイダル CVTのモード燃費を論議する場合は変速比幅と伝 達効率を含めて考慮しなければならない.有段AT の場合は変速比幅と伝達効率には,ほとんど相関 は無く,むしろ用いた遊星歯車列のスケルトンの 制約から変速比幅に制限が設けられることが多い.

本章では,トロイダルCVT及び有段ATの北米,日本,欧州の3つの主要市場におけるモード及び定地燃費を以下に示すシミュレーションにより検討し,各市場毎のCVTの優位性,必要な変速比幅を明確にした.

3.1. フリクションの考え方

燃費を計算する場合CVTのフリクションの扱いが重要であるが、ここでは、

- 1) トルクコンバータの損失
- 2) オイルポンプの損失
- 3)入力回転数及び入力トルクに依存するクラッチ,シールの損失
- 4) バリエータの損失
- 5)出力回転数及び出力トルクに依存するギヤ,ベアリングの損失に分離して扱い,バリエータの損失は前述の伝達効率を,変速比,入力回転数,入力トルクの3次元マップとして用いた.また,変速比の変化の応答性は1次遅れとして扱い,時定数を変速比に対するテーブルとして用いた.

有段ATのフリクションは

- 1) トルクコンバータの損失
- 2) オイルポンプの損失
- 3)回転数及びトルクに依存するクラッチ,ベアリング,シールの損失
- 4) 各段毎の遊星歯車列の伝達損失 に分離して扱い、5速AT、6速ATとも3列遊星 歯車列とし、最近の代表的なスケルトンを参 考に求めた.なお、それぞれの損失は現状の 最新技術をベースに数値を決めた.

3.2. 計算前提条件

計算の前提条件を以下に記す.

- 1) CVT,有段ATとも最Lowの変速比を同一とし, 加速性能を等しくする.
- 2) CVT,有段ATのロックアップスケジュールは Table 5に示す.

continuously and it will not drift into the above dilemma. The variator ratio spread can be widened up to the mechanical limitation. As explained in the last chapter, there is a possibility that we can get 6:1 ratio coverage with the toroidal CVT. But, the variator's efficiency will get worse when the ratio spread is more than a certain number. When we discuss mode fuel economy, we have to consider both the ratio spread and the variator's efficiency. In the case of a stepped AT, the efficiency is not influenced by ratio coverage. The limitation to the ratio coverage is rather decided by the planetary gear set selection.

In this chapter we will explain the result of the simulations used to evaluate fuel economy for the main vehicle market, for example, in North America, Japan and European market. We simulate the toroidal CVT and stepped AT in the above mentioned market using a constant condition at each speed. We understand the need for a suitable ratio coverage that will cover the fuel economy needs of each market.

3.1. The friction magnitude assumption

We look at the following friction items separately for toroidal CVT simulations.

- 1) Loss at the torque converter
- 2) Loss at the oil pump
- 3) Loss at the clutches and the seals as a function of input disc rotation number and input disc input torque
- 4) Loss at the variator
- 5) Loss at the gears and the bearings as a function of output disc rotation number and torque

Loss at the variator is calculated from efficiency data that was taken from the last chapter which used a function of variator ratio, input disc rotation and input torque. We use a 3dimensional map for the calculation. The speed of changing variator ratio is given as a primary delay function and the time constant is given as a function of variator ratio.

We use the following friction items for the step AT

- 1) Loss at the torque converter
- 2) Loss at the oil pump
- 3) Loss at the clutches, the bearings and the seals as a function of rotation number and torque
- 4) Loss at the planetary gear sets for each gear step For 5-speed and 6-speed step AT, we assume they use 3 planetary gear sets. The skeleton is recent typical one.

The magnitude of transmission friction loss should be compared to other available transmission technologies.

- 3) 走行モードはUSコンバインモード,日本10/15 モード,欧州ECモードとした.
- 4)車両はトロイダルCVTの商品ターゲットとして 比較的有望と考えられる車両を各市場毎に想定 し,日本及び欧州では乗用車(GVW1900kg), 北米ではSUV(GVW2900kg)を想定した.
- 5)有段ATの変速段数は欧州に対しては6速AT,日本及び米国に対しては5速ATとした。

Table 5 Lock-up schedule for each transmission

		5speed AT 6speed AT		Toroidal CVT
Slip lock-up	3rd	23km/h	23km/h	
Sub lock-ub	4th	40km/h	40km/h	
Lock-up	5th	50km/h	50km/h	
Lock-up	6th		50km/h	
Lock-up	15km/h			

3.3. 北米モード燃費結果

Fig. 5はUSコンバインモードにおける5速ATの燃費計算結果を示す.変速比幅が5.5において燃費最良値を示すことがわかる.

Fig. 6はCVTの諸元を変えた場合の燃費計算結果で,諸元は前章で示した9個のケースをそれぞれの番号及び変速比幅として横軸に配置している.なお,Fig. 5で最高燃費を示した変速比幅5.5の5速ATの燃費も最も右側に併せて表示している.CVTの最良燃費はケース#4(変速比幅5.778)であり,5速ATに対して約6%の燃費ゲインがある.

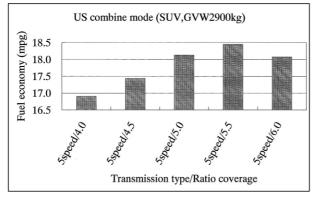


Fig. 5 Fuel economy of step AT with ratio spread (US market)

3.2. Condition of calculation

- The lowest variator ratio used for any transmission in this paper is the same, which keeps the acceleration performance almost the same.
- 2) The torque converter lock up schedule is listed in Table 5.
- 3) The driving modes are USA combined, Japanese 10/15 mode and Europe EC mode
- 4) For each market a vehicle model is selected that would be suitable for the toroidal CVT for that market. The SUV was selected for North America, and the passenger vehicle was selected for the Japanese and Europe market. The GVW for these vehicles are 4185 lb. (1900kg) and 6388 lb. (2900kg).
- 5) The step AT used for comparison was a 6-speed for Europe and a 5-speed for Japan & North America.

3.3. Calculation result for USA market

Figure 5 shows the calculation results for the step AT in the US combined mode. When changing ratio coverage from 5 to 6, The best fuel economy will be achieved at 5.5 ratio coverage.

Figure 6 is the result of the calculations for the toroidal CVT conducted on 9 cases in chapter 2.

As the ratio spread increased, the engine operation point moved to a better efficiency point. But, the variator's efficiency got worse rapidly when the ratio spread was more than 5.8. The best fuel economy ratio spread is near the 5.8 ratio. In figure 6, a 5 speed with a 5.5 ratio spread is also shown. The toroidal CVT has a 6% fuel economy gain versus the 5peed with a 5.5 ratio spread in US combined mode.

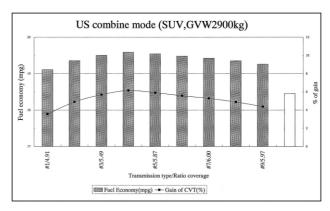


Fig. 6 US mode fuel economy of toroidal CVT with ratio spread and 5.5 ratio spread 5 speed AT

Fig.7にCVT, ATそれぞれの定地燃費を示す. CVTが40mph以下で良い結果を示しているのは,ロックアップスケジュールによるものである.

3.4. 日本モード燃費結果

Fig.8は日本の10/15モードにおける5速ATの燃費計算結果を示す.10/15モードは最高速が低いこともあり,最も良い燃費となる変速比幅は5.0となる.

Fig.9にはCVTの計算結果を示し,ケース#1(変速比幅4.905)において最良燃費が得られ,5速ATに対し約10%の燃費ゲインを示している.

Fig.10に定地燃費を示す.

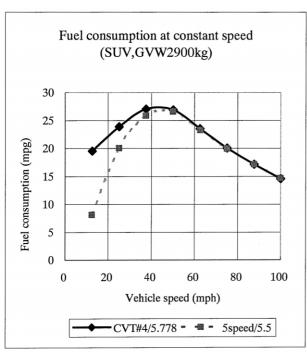


Fig.7 Fuel economy of toroidal CVT & step AT at constant speed driving (US Market)

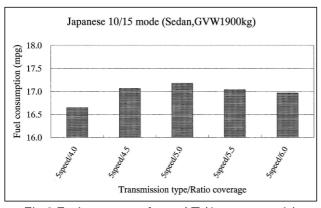


Fig.8 Fuel economy of step AT (Japanese mode)

Figure 7 shows Fuel economy data at a constant speed condition for the CVT & step AT. The reason why the CVT shows better fuel economy below 40 mph is because of the difference of each torque converter lock up schedule.

3.4. Calculation result for Japanese market

Figure 8 shows the calculation results for a step AT in the Japanese 10/15 mode. When changing the ratio coverage from 4 to 6, the best fuel economy will be achieved at a 5 ratio coverage. The main reason for this is because of the lower speed condition used for the Japanese 10/15 test mode. For the Japanese 10/15 mode fuel economy, a ratio spread of 5 is large enough.

Figure 9 is the calculation result of the toroidal CVT conducted on 9 cases in chapter 6. For the same reason as the step AT, there is a very small difference for the Japanese 10/15 mode when changing the ratio coverage from 5 to 6. The best fuel economy ratio spread is near 5. In this figure, a 5 speed with a 5 ratio spread is also shown. The toroidal CVT has an approximately 10% fuel economy gain versus the 5 speed with a 5.5 ratio spread.

Figure 10 is fuel economy at constant driving condition in Japanese market.

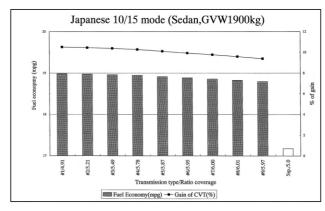


Fig.9 Japanese 10/15 mode fuel economy of toroidal CVT with ratio spread and 5 ratio spread 5 speed AT

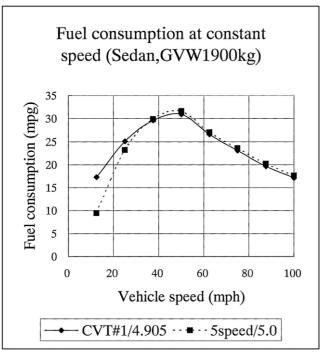


Fig. 10 Fuel economy at constant speed driving (Japan)

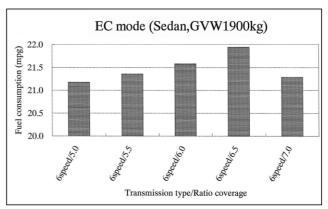


Fig. 11 Fuel economy of step AT (EC mode)

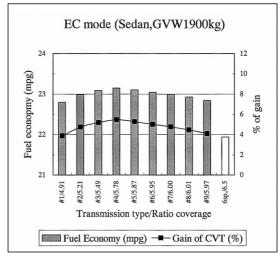


Fig. 12 Europe EC mode fuel economy of toroidal CVT with ratio spread and 6.5 ratio spread 6 speed AT

3.5. 欧州モード燃費結果

Fig. 11は欧州ECモードにおける6速ATの燃費計算結果を示す.高速走行が多いため,最良燃費は変速比幅6.5で得られる.これを越えると,最上段で走行できる頻度が減少し,燃費は逆に低下していることがわかる.

Fig. 12にはCVTのモード燃費計算結果を示す. USコンバインモードと同じくケース#4(変速比幅5.78)で最良燃費を示し,バリエータ効率の低下する変速比幅5.8以上では燃費も悪化する.なお6速ATに対し約5%の燃費ゲインが得られる事がわかる.

Fig. 13に定地燃費を示す.6速ATの場合,広い変速比幅を生かし,130mphまでの高速燃費はCVTに対し非常に良い値を示している.なお130mphを越えると最上段で走行できなくなり,定地燃費が低下していることがわかる.

3.5. Calculation result for European market

Figure 11 shows the calculation results for a step AT with an EC mode. Because the average speed is relatively high, the best fuel economy will be achieved at a 6.5 ratio coverage. Figure 12 shows the calculation results in the European market for the toroidal CVT conducted on 9 cases in chapter 6. When the ratio coverage is more than 5.8, the variator efficiency and fuel economy gets worse. This is different than the step AT. The best fuel economy ratio spread is near the 5.8 ratio. In this figure, a 6 speed with a 6.5 ratio spread is also shown. The toroidal CVT has approximately a 5.5% fuel economy gain versus the 6 speed with a 6.5 ratio spread.

Figure 13 shows fuel economy at a constant driving condition in the European market. The step AT with a wide ratio spread of 6.5 shows very good fuel economy from 50 to 130 mph. Over 130 mph, the fuel economy gets worse because it can not be operated at the highest gear.

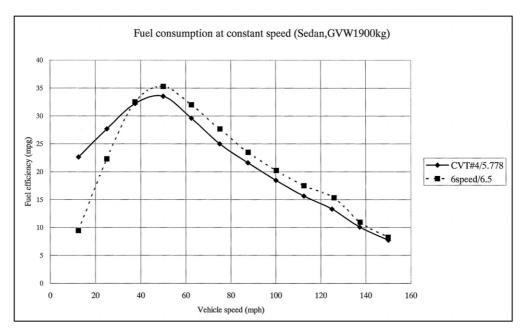


Fig.13 Fuel economy at constant driving condition in Europe market

4. まとめ

- 1)限られた大きさのなかで設計したトロイダル CVTの変速比幅と燃費について考察した.
- 2)日本市場においては5,米国および欧州市場においては5.8程度の変速比幅をもつトロイダル CVTが最良燃費を示す.
- 3) ATに対し,日本市場では約10%,米国および欧州市場では約5~6%の燃費向上効果が得られた.
- 4) 欧州のように高速走行が多い市場での燃費向上には、トロイダルバリエータ部の効率向上が重要となる.

最後に,ご協力いただいた日産自動車(株)総合研究所 動力環境研究所の方々に御礼申し上げます.

参考文献

1)田中裕久:トロイダルCVT コロナ社

4. Conclusions

We can summarize as follows.

- There is a ratio spread with which we can achieve best fuel economy for the half-toroidal CVT with the restriction of size.
- 2) These ratio spread are less than 5 ratio spread for the Japanese market and approximately a 5.8 spread for the US and European market.
- 3) The superiority of the toroidal CVT to a step AT is remarkable with a 10% fuel economy gain in Japan In the US & Europe it is approximately a 5 to 6% gain due to high speeds.
- 4) If the high speed is continued to be allowed in Europe, the toroidal CVT needs to improve to compensate inferiority of the variator efficiency.

Finally, the authors would like to express their appreciation to various individuals at NISSAN MOTOR CO., LTD. Nissan Research Center, Powertrain and Environment Research Laboratory.

Reference

1) H. Tanaka, "Toroidal CVT", Corona Publishing Co. Ltd.

Authors



Toshifumi HIBI



Yasuo SUMI



Tohru TAKEUCHI

IHAT (Integrated Hybrid Automatic Transmission)の開発

Development of an Integrated Hybrid Automatic Transmission (IHAT)

藤川 雅人

吹野 真人 中島健治

望月 政治

Masato FUJIKAWA

Masato FUKINO

Kenji NAKASHIMA

Masaharu MOCHIZUKI

抄 録 当社はIntegrated Hybrid Automatic Transmission (IHAT)というハイブリッドシステムを開発している.

IHATは遊星歯車の3要素にエンジン ,Motor / Generator (M/G),AT入力軸(トルクコンバータ(TC)なし)を接続 したものである.

IHATはIntegrated Starter Generator(ISG)に似ているが, ISGよりも燃費と搭載性が優れている.本報では,その 構造・動作を説明する.また,滑らかな運転性を保つた めの制御の一部を紹介する.

Summary We are developing an electric hybrid drive system called an integrated hybrid automatic transmission (IHAT). In the IHAT system, an internal combustion engine, a motor-generator and an automatic transmission without a torque converter are connected to the three members of a planetary gearset. The IHAT is similar to an integrated starter generator (ISG) system, but is shorter in length and provides better fuel economy.

This paper describes the structure and functions of the IHAT and explains the control system used to maintain smooth driveability.

1.はじめに

近年,燃費性能の改善がますます重要になって きている.燃費向上のためには,ハイブリッドシ ステムの採用が有効な手段である. ハイブリッド システムは様々な形式のものが考えられているが, その中で量産化が有望視されているものの一つに ISGがある. ISGの燃費改善効果は比較的小さいが, 構造がシンプルなので,エンジンのみを動力源と する従来の車両に,比較的小さな改造で搭載でき る特長がある. ISGは古くからバス等に採用されて きたが,最近では本田インサイトで乗用車への採 用も始まっている.

我々は,AT/CVTの内部にM/Gを組み込みんだハ イブリッドシステムを開発中である.それがIHAT である.

2.IHATの構造

Fig. 1にIHATの構造を示す.

単純遊星歯車のリングギアにエンジンを, サン ギアにM/Gを,キャリアにTCを取り外したATの入 力軸を接続してある.また,エンジンとATを直結 するロックアップクラッチ(LU/C)と, キャリアの 逆回転を防ぐワンウェイクラッチ(OWC)がある.

1. Introduction

Improvement of vehicle fuel economy has become an increasingly important issue in recent years. One effective way of improving fuel economy is to adopt a hybrid system. Hybrid systems can be configured in a variety of ways, and an integrated starter generator (ISG) is one configuration that looks promising for mass production. The fuel economy gain of an ISG system is relatively small, but because of its simple construction, it offers the advantage that it can be implemented in conventional vehicles powered only by an internal combustion engine by making relatively minor modifications. Although ISG units have been used for many years on buses and other vehicles, their recent application to passenger cars began with the Honda

We are now developing a hybrid system, called the IHAT, that integrates a motor-generator with an AT or CVT.

2. IHAT Configuration

The configuration of the IHAT system is shown in Fig. 1. In this simple form, an internal combustion engine is connected to the ring gear of a planetary gearset, a motor-generator to the sun gear and the input shaft of an AT, without a torque converter, to the carrier. In addition, a lockup clutch directly connects the engine and AT, and a one-way clutch is used to prevent reverse revolution of the carrier.

A cross-sectional view of an IHAT test unit for application to rear-wheel-drive vehicles is shown in Fig. 2.

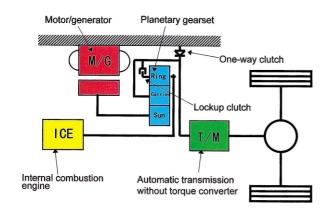


Fig. 1 IHAT Configuration

Fig. 3はIHAT試作ユニットと, そのベースとなった通常のATの, ベルハウジング部の拡大図である.

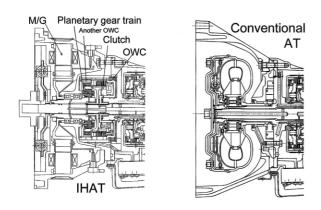


Fig. 3 Sectional views of bell housings of the IHAT test unit and conventional AT

IHATのベルハウジングの長さは,通常のATと全く同一である.

なおこの試作ユニットでは,LU/Cの制御を容易にするため,LU/Cと並列にOWCがもう一つ取り付けられている.

Fig. 4はFF車での, AT/CVT・ISG・IHATそれぞれのパワートレインレイアウトである.

AT/CVTでは,エンジンと,遊星歯車・クラッチ/ブレーキ・プーリを納めたケースとの間に,TCを納めたハウジングがある.

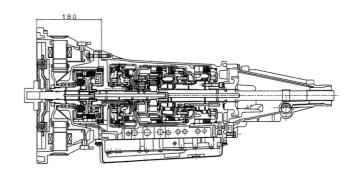


Fig. 2 Sectional view of an IHAT test unit for rearwheel-drive vehicles

Figure 3 shows enlarged views of the bell housings of the IHAT test unit and a conventional AT on which the former is based.

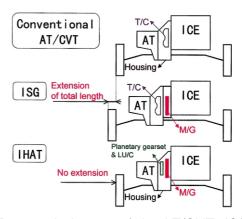


Fig. 4 Powertrain layouts of the AT/CVT, ISG, and IHAT for front-wheel-drive vehicles

The IHAT bell housing is exactly the same length as that of the conventional AT.

To allow easy control of the lockup clutch in this IHAT test unit, another one-way clutch is provided in parallel with the lockup clutch.

Figure 4 compares the powertrain layouts of a conventional AT/CVT, ISG and IHAT for a front-wheel-drive vehicle. In the AT/CVT layout, a housing containing the torque converter is installed between the engine and the case containing the planetary gearset, clutches, brakes and pulleys.

通常ISGは,既存の変速機を流用する.従って Fig. 4のように,システムの全長がM/Gの長さだけ 延長される.これは特にFF車で非常に大きな問題である.システムを車載するには,変速機または エンジン / 補機を短縮するか,エンジンコンパートメントを拡幅しなければならない.

IHATはTCを持たないため,ハウジングの内部に,M/G・LU/C・IHAT遊星歯車を納めることができる.従って,全長があまり延びないので,比較的容易に車載できる.最近の超扁平TCを採用しているAT/CVTでは少し全長が延びることになるが,それでも伸び量はISGに比べて軽微である.

3. IHATの機能

(1)アイドルストップからのエンジン再始動

燃費を改善するため, Dレンジでブレーキを踏んで停車しているとき アイドルストップする(Fig. 5).

ドライバがブレーキを放すと、全ての要素が停止した状態からM/Gに逆トルクを発生させ、逆方向に回転させる。するとOWCが自動的にロックし、エンジンがクランキングされて始動する。

遊星歯車の作用により、クランキングトルクは M/Gトルクより大きくなる.このため、搭載性に優れた小さなM/Gから得られる限られたトルクで、エンジンを素早く再始動できる.

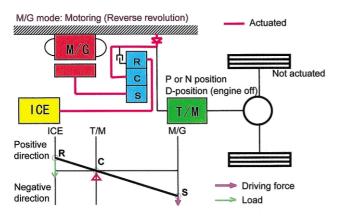


Fig. 5 Engine start-stop feature

(2)クリープ

エンジンが始動したら,M/Gのトルク方向を正方向に変える (Fig. 6). すると直ちにエンジントルクとM/Gトルクが遊星歯車で合成され,キャリアからATに出力されて駆動力を発生し,クリープする.このとき,M/Gは発電する.

Ordinarily, an ISG unit is used together with an existing transmission, which means the overall length of the powertrain system is extended by an amount equal to the motor-generator length, as seen in the figure. This poses a serious problem, especially on front-wheel-drive cars. In order to mount the system in a vehicle, either the transmission or the engine/auxiliaries must be shortened or the engine compartment must be enlarged.

Because the IHAT system does not have a torque converter, the motor-generator, lockup clutch and IHAT planetary gearset can all fit inside the housing. Consequently, it is relatively easy to mount the system in a vehicle because the overall length of the powertrain does not increase very much. Although the overall length does increase slightly in the case of an AT/CVT equipped with a recent ultra-flat torque converter, the amount is insignificant compared with the ISG system.

3. IHAT Functions

(1) Automatic engine start-stop

The engine shuts off automatically to improve fuel economy when the driver brakes the vehicle to a stop with the selector lever in the D position (Fig. 5). Releasing the brake pedal causes the motor-generator to produce reverse torque, and all the elements start revolving in the reverse direction from a stopped state. The one-way clutch then automatically locks up so that the engine can be cranked and started.

The planetary gearset acts to make the cranking torque larger than the motor-generator torque. As a result, the engine can be restarted instantly using just the limited torque available from the compact motorgenerator unit that allows excellent mountability.

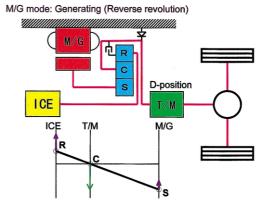


Fig. 6 Creep capability

(2) Creep capability

Once the engine starts, the motor-generator torque changes to the positive direction (Fig. 6). The engine torque and motor-generator torque are then immediately combined in the planetary gearset and output from the carrier to the AT to produce driving force, enabling the vehicle to creep. The motor-generator generates electricity at this point.

(3)発進

ドライバがスロットルを開いてエンジンがトルクを発生し始めると、IHATはエンジンの運転状態に応じてM/Gトルクを増加させる(Fig. 7). M/Gトルクを適切に制御することにより、エンジン回転を適切に保ちながら車両を滑らかに加速することができる。

加速中,ある時点でM/Gの回転方向が逆方向から 正方向に変化し,M/Gは発電から力行に移る.

更に加速していくと, M/G回転はエンジン回転に 近づく.M/G回転がエンジン回転と等しくなったら, LU/Cを締結し, エンジン, M/G, 及びAT入力軸を 直結する(Fig. 8, 9).

通常のAT/CVTやISGは,発進時にTC等の発進装置でエネルギーを損失する.しかしIHATでは,損失はM/G,インバータ,及びバッテリでの電気的損失のみであり,燃費が向上する.

(3) Vehicle start-off

When the driver presses the accelerator to open the throttle, the engine starts to produce torque and the IHAT unit increases the motor-generator torque according to the engine operating state (Fig. 7). By suitably controlling the motor-generator torque, the engine speed is controlled to an appropriate level, enabling the vehicle to accelerate smoothly.

At a certain point during vehicle acceleration, the direction of motor-generator revolution changes from the reverse to the position direction, and the unit switches from the generating to the propulsion mode. As the vehicle accelerates further, the motor-generator speed approaches that of the engine, and when the speeds of both units become equal, the lockup clutch engages to directly connect the engine, motor-generator and the input shaft of the AT (Figs. 8 and 9).

With a conventional AT/CVT or an ISG system, energy loss occurs in the start-up device, such as a torque converter, when a vehicle starts off. In the IHAT system, however, the only losses are electrical ones in the motor-generator, inverter and battery, with the result that fuel economy is improved.

M/G mode: Generating (Reverse revolution) --> Motoring

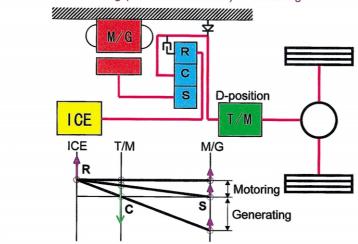


Fig. 7 Vehicle start-off

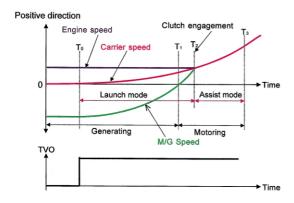


Fig. 8 Time chart of vehicle start-off

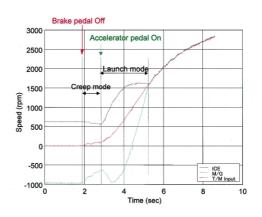


Fig. 9 Test data for vehicle start-off

(4) 直結走行,パワーアシスト,回生制動

LU/Cが直結された状態では,IHATはISGと同じ動作をする.

定常走行中でバッテリ残量が充分であるときは, M/Gトルクをゼロとして走行する(Fig. 10).

加速時はM/Gから正トルクを発生し,動力性能を 高める(Fig. 11).

M/G mode: Not operating

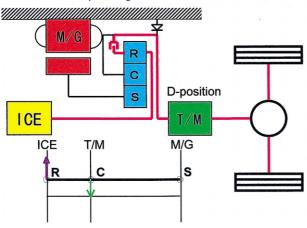


Fig. 10 Direct drive

減速時はM/Gから逆トルクを発生し,回生して燃費を改善する(Fig. 12).

M/G mode: Generating

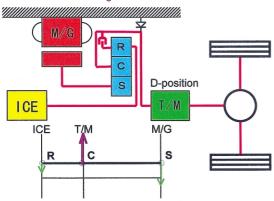


Fig. 12 Regenerative braking

(5)発電

発電が必要になった場合, N/Pレンジ, または直結走行中は, LU/Cを締結し, M/Gに逆トルクを発生させる.

Dレンジでエンジンが回っており,かつドライバがブレーキを踏んで車両停止しているときは,逆回転しているM/Gに正トルクを発生させ発電する(Fig. 13).

(4) Direct drive, power assist and regenerative braking

With the lockup clutch in the directly connected state, the IHAT system operates in the same way as the ISG system. When the battery state of charge is sufficient in ordinary driving, the vehicle is propelled without any torque output from the motor-generator (Fig. 10). During acceleration, the motor-generator produces positive torque to augment the vehicle's power performance (Fig. 11).

M/G mode: Motoring

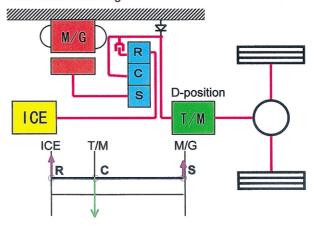


Fig. 11 Power assist

When the vehicle decelerates, the motor-generator produces reverse torque that is regenerated to charge the battery, which works to improve fuel economy (Fig. 12).

M/G mode: Generating (Reverse revolution)

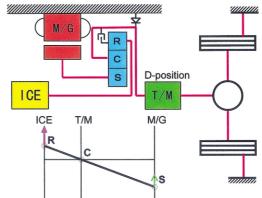


Fig. 13 Electric power generation in D-position (vehicle is stopped & engine is idling)

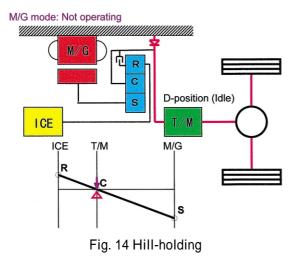
(5) Electric power generation

If electric power generation is needed when the selector lever is in the N or P position or during direct-drive operation, the lockup clutch engages, causing the motor-generator to produce reverse torque. When the driver brings the vehicle to a stop by braking, with the selector lever in the D position and the engine running, the reverse-revolving motor-generator produces positive torque to generate electricity (Fig. 13).

(6)ヒルホールド

ISGでは,アイドルストップ状態から登り坂で再発進しようとするとき,ドライバがブレーキを離してからエンジン始動して駆動力が発生するまでの間,車両が後ずさりすることが問題になる(Fig. 14).

IHATでは,OWCの作用により,ATのギアをエンゲージするに充分な油圧が得られていれば,エンジンが停止していても後ずさりしない.



4. IHATの燃費改善効果

試作車で燃費改善効果を実測した結果,10-15モードで36%向上した.Table 1に試作車の仕様を示す.また,MATLABでのシミュレーションにより,燃費改善効果を推定した.10-15モードでの計算結果は37%の向上であり,実験と良く一致している.欧州ECモードでの計算結果は,21%の向上であった(Fig. 15).なおシミュレーションの条件は,試作車による実験条件と同じである.

(6) Hill-holding capability

One problem that occurs with the ISG system is that a vehicle can roll backward when a driver tries to take off again on an uphill grade following automatic shut-off of the engine. This happens in the interval from the time the driver releases the brake pedal until the engine starts and driving force is generated.

With the IHAT system, a vehicle does not roll backward even with the engine off, so long as the action of the one-way clutch provides sufficient hydraulic pressure to engage the AT gears.

Table 1 Specifications of the test vehicle

Type, Displacement	Gasoline, 6 cylinders, 1,998 cc				
Max. torque/Power	172 Nm@4,400 rpm/96 kW@5,600 rpm				
Type	Permanent-magnet synchronous				
Max. torque/Power	122.5 Nm@0-1,000 rpm/41 kW@4,000 rpm				
Type	Nickel-metal hydride				
Voltage	288 V (7.2 V x 40 modules)				
Max. power	22 kW (0.55 kW x 40 modules)				
Gear ratio	1st=3.027/2nd=1.619/3rd=1.000/ 4th=0.694/Rev=2.272, Final=4.083				
nicle curb weight	1,655 kg				
	Max. torque/Power Type Max. torque/Power Type Voltage Max. power				

4. Fuel Economy Improvement Obtained with IHAT

The effect of the IHAT system on improving fuel economy was measured under Japan's 10-15 test mode using a test vehicle. The results showed an improvement of 36%. Table 1 gives the specifications of the test vehicle.

The fuel economy improvement was also estimated in a simulation conducted with MATLAB. A calculation made for the 10-15 test mode showed an improvement of 37%, which agreed well with the experimental result. A calculation made for the EC test mode used in Europe indicated an improvement of 21% (Fig. 15). These simulations were run under the same conditions as those of the test conducted with the test vehicle.

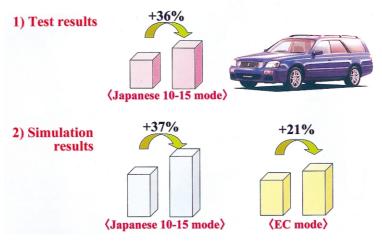


Fig. 15 Fuel economy improvement

5.IHATの動力性能

発進加速時,通常のAT車はTCを持つため,トルクコンバータレンジでトルク増大作用により大きな加速度を得る.IHATはTCを持たないが,エンジントルクにM/Gトルクを加えることで加速度を大きくする.

Fig. 16に, IHAT試作車とそのベースとなった通常のAT車の発進加速度波形を示す.

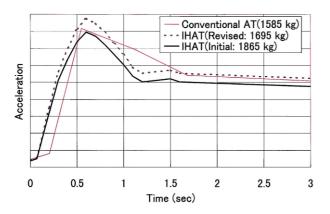


Fig. 16 Acceleration performance

IHATの実験結果(黒)は通常AT車(赤)よりほぼ全域で劣っているが、これは暫定的な改造や多数搭載した計測器による、今回製作した試作車の大幅な車重増加(+280kg)の結果である.そこで、重量増加が+110kgであるとして補正した(青).

IHATはTC車を上回るピークGを得る.しかしその後はトルクコンバータレンジで走行するTC車に劣る.これはM/G・バッテリ出力の制限により,高回転ではM/Gトルクが低下するためである.

TC車がカップリングレンジに入ると,IHATが勝る.これはM/Gでアシストし続けられるからである.

6. IHATのシャクリ問題と、その対策

IHATはTCを持たず、遊星歯車を介してエンジンとATの入力軸とが常時接続されている。そのため発進時に、エンジントルクの急変がドライブシャフトのねじり振動を励起してシャクリを生ずる。

そこで,シャクリを抑制するM/Gトルク制御手法を開発した.我々はそれをカウンタ制御と呼んでいる.

Fig.17は,カウンタ制御の概要である.

5. Power Performance Obtained with IHAT

Cars fitted with a conventional AT can provide powerful take-off acceleration, thanks to the torque amplification effect of their torque converter. While the IHAT system does not have a torque converter, the motor-generator torque is added to the engine torque to enhance acceleration performance.

Figure 16 compares the take-off acceleration waveforms measured for the IHAT-equipped test vehicle and for the base vehicle fitted with a conventional AT.

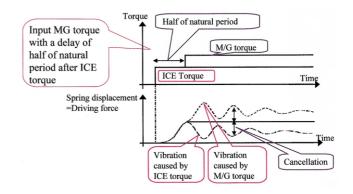


Fig. 17 Counter-phase control

The IHAT test data (black waveform) are inferior to those (red waveform) of the conventional AT-equipped vehicle in nearly every speed range. This result can be attributed to the substantially heavier weight (+280 kg) of the test vehicle owing to the provisional modifications made and to the numerous measuring devices installed onboard. Therefore, a correction was made for a vehicle weight increase of just 110 kg, and the result is shown as the blue waveform.

It is seen that the IHAT-equipped test vehicle achieved a peak G level exceeding that of the torque converter-fitted vehicle. However, its acceleration performance subsequently fell below that of the latter vehicle in the torque conversion range. This is attributed to the decline in the motor-generator torque at high engine speed owing to the limited output of the motor-generator and battery. Once the torque converter-fitted vehicle entered the coupled range, the IHAT-equipped vehicle showed superior performance. This is because the motor-generator continued to provide power assist.

6. IHAT Jerkiness Problem and Its Resolution

Because the IHAT system does not have a torque converter, the engine and AT input shaft are always connected via the planetary gearset. Consequently, a sudden change in engine torque as a vehicle starts off can induce torsional vibration in the drive shaft, causing the vehicle to jerk. A method was therefore developed for controlling the motor-generator torque so as suppress such jerky behavior. The control method is outlined in Fig. 17.

エンジン速度とスロットル開度(TVO)からエンジントルクを推定し、エンジントルクが励起する振動と同振幅で逆位相の振動を励起するようにM/Gトルクを操作する.具体的には、エンジントルクにあるゲインを掛けたトルクを、エンジントルクから固有周期の半分遅らせてM/Gから入力する.すると、エンジントルクが励起した振動をM/Gトルクが励起した振動が相殺し、シャクリが抑制される. Fig. 18はブロック線図である.上部がカウンタ制御部である.

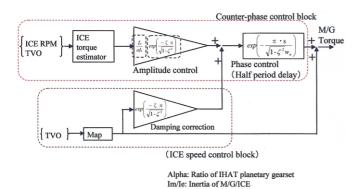


Fig. 18 Block diagram of counter-phase control

M/Gトルクからとエンジントルクからとで,ドライブシャフトネジリ角までのゲインが異なる.そこで2つの振幅を等しくするために,M/Gトルクが,エンジントルクに2つのゲインの比を掛けたものになるように制御している.

ゲインの比は解析的に求められ,

(M/Gイナーシア)/(エンジンイナーシア)/(IHAT遊星歯数比)である.

ただしエンジンによる振動は半周期の間に減衰されるので,M/Gトルクを更に別のゲインで補正し,振幅を調整している.このゲインは実験的に調整した.また,固有周期も実験から求めた.

下部はエンジン回転速度制御部である.励振しないように,エンジン回転速度制御のためのトルクを,同様の手法でフィルタリングしている.

Fig. 19に, TVO=4 / 8の発進加速におけるカウン タ制御の効果を示す.

カウンタ制御無しではG波形にシャクリが現れているが、カウンタ制御有りではシャクリが抑制されている。

Engine torque is estimated based on the engine speed and throttle valve opening, and the motor-generator torque is manipulated such that it produces vibration at the same amplitude but in the opposite phase of that induced by the engine torque. Specifically, a certain gain is applied to the engine torque and the resulting torque is input into the motor-generator after the engine torque and with a delay equal to one-half of its natural period. As a result, the motor-generator torque produces vibration that cancels out the vibration induced by the engine torque, thereby suppressing jerky vehicle behavior.

Figure 18 is a block diagram of the counter-phase control procedure, which is shown in the upper block of the diagram.

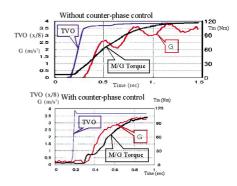


Fig. 19 Effect of counter-phase control

The gain to the torsional angle of the drive shaft differs between the vibration caused by the motorgenerator torque and that due to the engine torque. Therefore, in order to equalize the two vibrations, the motor-generator torque is controlled such that it becomes the value obtained by multiplying the engine torque by the ratio of the two gains. The gain ratio can be found analytically as: (motor-generator inertia)/engine inertia)/(IHAT planetary gearset ratio).

However, because the vibration caused by the engine torque is attenuated in the half-period interval, the motor-generator torque is further corrected using a separate gain value to adjust the amplitude. That gain has been adjusted on basis of experimental data. The natural period was also found experimentally.

The lower part of Fig. 18 is the engine speed control block. Torque for controlling the engine speed is filtered using the same procedure so as not to cause any disturbance.

Figure 19 shows the effect of this control procedure during start-off acceleration at TVO = 4/8. Jerky behavior is observed in the G waveform without counter-phase control, but jerkiness was suppressed in the waveform obtained with this control method.

7. 結論

- ・IHATはTCを持たないので、ハウジング内にM/Gを配置できる.また、遊星歯車がクランキングトルクを増幅するので、M/Gが小型になる.従って、システムの全長があまり延びず、車載が比較的容易である.
- ・IHATは,アイドルストップと回生制動の機能を持つ.また,TCなどの発進装置を使わないので, 発進時のエネルギ損失が通常のAT車より小さい. その結果,10-15モードで実測36%の燃費改善効果が得られる.欧州ECモードではシミュレーションから21%の向上が推定される.
- ・IHATは加速時にM/Gトルクでアシストする.通 常のTC付き車両に対し,トルクコンバータレン ジでは加速が劣るが,カップリングレンジでは 勝る.
- ・IHATはTCを持たないが,M/Gトルクを適切に制 御することによって,シャクリは抑制される.

7. Conclusion

- Since the IHAT system does not have a torque converter, the motor-generator can be incorporated inside the housing. Moreover, a compact motorgenerator can be used because the planetary gearset amplifies engine cranking torque. As a result, the IHAT system is relatively easy to install in vehicles because its overall length does not increase appreciably.
- The IHAT system has capabilities for automatic engine start-stop and regenerative braking. Moreover, because it does not have a start-off element such as a torque converter, it suffers less energy loss during vehicle start-off than conventional AT-equipped vehicles. As a result, a 36% improvement in fuel economy with the IHAT system was measured under Japan's 10-15 test mode. A simulation run under Europe's EC mode showed an estimated fuel economy improvement of 21%.
- The motor-generator torque provides power assist in the IHAT system during acceleration. Although the IHAT system's acceleration performance is inferior to that of a conventional torque converter-equipped vehicle in the torque conversion range, it is superior in the coupled range.
- While the IHAT system does not have a torque converter, jerkiness is suppressed by suitably controlling motor-generator torque.

Authors



Masato FUJIKAWA



Masato FUKINO



Kenji NAKASHIMA



Masaharu MOCHIZUKI

JEPS活動について

The JEPS Activity

牧野 克己*
Katsumi MAKINO

小川 博由* Hiroyoshi OGAWA

抄 録 JEPS (JATCO Excellent Production System)は, ジヤトコ流ものづくりを意味しており,その範囲は製造 現場だけでなく,準直・間接部門の業務を包含している.

当JEPS活動の特徴は,生産管理,エンジニアリング,現場管理の3本の柱を切り口にして,TQM,TPM,JIT活動で得られたノウハウを結集し,しくみの改善,標準化をしていくことで,当社流ものづくりを構築するプロセスにある.

Summary The JATCO Excellent Production System (JEPS) refers to the JATCO way of manufacturing. The scope of this system is not limited to the shop floor, but also includes the work of semi-direct and indirect departments. The JEPS activity can be characterized as follows. It is based on the three pillars of production control, engineering and shop floor management ("genba kanri"), and the know-how gained through TQM, TQP and JIT activities is brought together and used to improve and standardize the systems involved. This provides the overall process for pursuing the JATCO way of manufacturing.

1.はじめに

当社の外部環境から「ものづくり」へ要求されて いることとして,

- ・商品構成の変革期における収益の確保
- ・他社との競争に勝ち抜くスピード
- ・多品種少量生産レベルの向上
- ・海外での生産方式の確立

などが上げられる.

本稿では,活動のねらいをはじめとして,活動 状況,めざす姿,特徴,活動事例について説明する.

2.ねらい

- (1)ジヤトコ流ものづくりを再構築して,競争力,利益体質を強化する.
- (2) それらの活動内容を「ジヤトコ流生産システム」として標準化する.
- (3)外部環境や顧客の動きに会社全体で同期する仕事のやり方を追求する.

を主なねらいとして活動する.

1. Introduction

The following items can be cited as examples of the requirements placed on our manufacturing way by the external environment:

- Assurance of profitability during a time of a changing product mix
- Speed for winning the competition with other companies
- Improvement of the level of small-lot, large-variety production
- Establishment of the production system at overseas plants

This paper begins with an explanation of the objectives of the JEPS activity and then explains its current status, desired form, characteristics and examples of the activities involved.

2. OBJECTIVES of JEPS

The principal objectives of the JEPS activity are:

- To strengthen the company's competitiveness and profit structure by rebuilding the JATCO way of manufacturing.
- (2) To standardize the content of the various activities in line with the "JATCO-style production system."
- (3) To pursue ways of synchronizing the work of the entire company so as to match developments in the external environment and among our customers.

Production Control Department

生產管理部

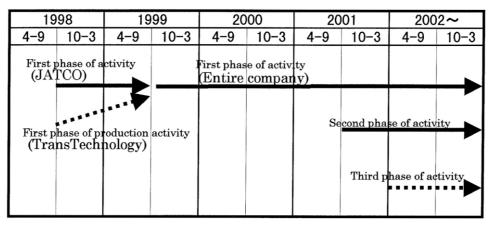


Fig. 1 Schedule of activities

3. 活動状況

3.1. 活動計画

概略の活動計画表をFig. 1に示す.

第1期活動……モノの流れを切り口にした活動

(生産システムの改善)

第2期活動……準直,間接業務の効率化 第3期活動……経費を切り口にした活動

3.2. 活動状況

現時点では,第2期活動スタートの時期であり,志し半ばというところである.活動の対象という面から見ると,第1期活動が最も重要な活動と言える.製造業の原点は製造現場であり,ここでのムダや上流部門からのツケがはっきりと現れるからである.

第1期活動で見えてきた課題は,

- (1)全社を通して「ものづくり」の基本的な考え方の 統一が不十分で,その設定プロセスも標準化さ れていない.
- (2)製造現場だけでは解決できない課題をスタッフ 部門が自部門の課題として取り組む認識が不十分.
- (3)上記(2)を理由に改善していくスピードが遅い. などが上げられる.

特に(2)の部分で課題認識として大きいと感じられるのは,多品種少量生産の意味である.

客先に対して多品種であるのは,競争力から見て当然であるが,それはあくまでも最終商品が多品種ということであり,構成部品までを多品種にすることでは無い.構成部品が多品種であると,後述する収益力,競争力に大きな影響を及ぼす.この点の認識がやや弱いところが重要課題であろう.

3. Activity Status

3.1. Activity plan

An outline of the activity plan schedule is shown in Fig. 1.

First phase:

Activities focused on the flow of materials with the aim of improving the production system.

Second phase:

Activities to improve the efficiency of semi-direct and indirect operations.

Third phase: Activities focused on costs

3.2. Current status

Currently, the second phase of the JEPS activity is beginning, and we are on the way toward our targeted goals. From the standpoint of the focus of JEPS, the activities carried out in the first phase were probably the most important. The starting point of manufacturing is the shop floor. This is where waste, inefficiencies and the "bills" of the upstream departments become clear.

The first-phase activities revealed the following issues:

- (1) The basic concept of manufacturing is not sufficiently unified throughout the company. Moreover, there is no standard process for setting targets with respect to the production lot size, lead time and other parameters of production activities.
- (2) Staff departments are not fully conscious of the fact that issues which cannot be resolved solely on the shop floor must be tackled as problems that concern their own departments.
- (3)On account of the situation in (2), the speed of improvement is slow.

One issue in particular that is strongly felt in connection with the situation noted in (2) is the understanding of the meaning of small-lot, large-variety production. The provision of a large variety of products to customers is only natural from the standpoint of being competitive. It is strictly due to the multiple varieties of the final product and is not done for the sake of diversifying the product mix. Having a diversified product mix greatly affects profitability and competitiveness, as will be explained later. One key issue here is the somewhat low level of awareness regarding this point.

4. 特徴

第一期活動の特徴について,従来の個別現場改善活動とは考え方,実行面で色々な相違点があるので,以下に説明する.

4.1. 収益力について

一般的な計算式は

利益=販価-原価

であるが,原価を意識すると,下記式のほうが解 りやすい。

原価=販価-利益

「販価」はお客様との関係で決まる.目標とする「利益」を出すためには,販価・利益を「原価」としてそれを達成するしかない.

つまり,いくら儲かるではなく,原価をいくらで抑えるかをはっきりした方が各部門毎にやることがはっきりする.

Fig. 2のような割付試算表を各事業所単位で作成し,製造部門で原価(利益)をコントロールできるようにする要素を増やしていくことで,利益が出る体質を作ることである.

実際の活動においては「4大指標」を設定し,工場粗利益率,付加価値額対工場管理比率,1人当り付加価値額,定常在庫金額日数を月次で事業所別に管理する仕組みになっている.

4.2. 競争力について

競合他社と生産リードタイムでベンチマークをしてみると,約3日分(48時間分)の開きがあった. Fig.3にイメージ図を示す.

4. Characteristics of JEPS

This section explains the characteristics of the firstphase activities inasmuch as their concept and method of execution differed in various ways from the individual efforts pursued previously to implement shop floor improvements.

4.1. Profitability

According to a general formula:

profit = price - cost

However, when focus is placed on cost, the following expression is easier to understood:

cost = price - profit

Price is determined on the basis of the relationship with the customer. The only way to realize one's target profit is to achieve the cost figure that results from subtracting the profit from the price.

In other words, the actions that each department should take are seen more clearly by indicating how much the cost should be held down, rather than by indicating how much profit is to be made. Each factory prepares its own apportionment chart for setting targets like that shown in Fig. 2. By increasing the number of elements for which the cost (profit) can be controlled in the manufacturing division, structures can be put in place for generating profit.

In carrying out the actual activities, four major indexes are set--the factory's gross profit, the ratio of added value to factory management cost, added value per employee and the number of days of inventories needed for regular production activities. These indices are managed separately at each factory on a monthly basis.

4.2. Competitiveness

A benchmark comparison of production lead time with a competitor revealed a difference of approximately three days (48 hours). This difference is shown schematically in Fig. 3.

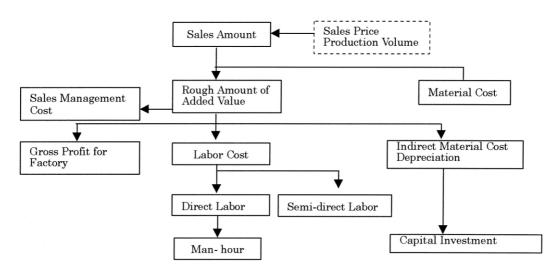


Fig. 2 Diagram for setting targets

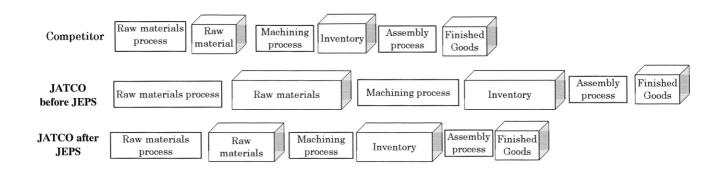


Fig. 3 Lead time difference

この理由として以下の内容が上げられる.

- (1)工程間(粗材~加工~組立)のリードタイムが長い.
- (2)上記工程間の各ラインが個別最適であり,一本の流れとしての仕組みが弱い.
- (3)生産を止めるルールが不明確.
- (4)見込み生産をしている.

この問題の解決方法として,1/2シフト(約4時間)を一つの管理スパンとして「1/2シフト確定受注生産方式」を採用した.

「組立」…客先からの受注分だけ組立し,出荷する. 「加工」…客先からの受注分だけを組立リードタ イム分だけ先行して加工し,組立へ供 給する.必要な分だけ,粗材工程へ要 求する.

「粗材」…加工から要求された分だけ加工部門へ 供給し、引き取られた分だけ補填する.

これにより,各工程毎の作る,止めるルールをベースに工程間のリードタイムを短くすることが出来た.競合他社との差はまだ残っているが,約2日間分は短縮することができた.

実際の活動では,TPM活動をベースとした基盤強化(設備故障低減,品質不良低減,5S)の推進と出荷便合わせ,1/2シフト生産など12項目に及ぶ重点項目を設定し,全ライン(約400ライン)を対象に活動を推進している.

The following factors can be cited as the reasons for this difference in lead time.

- (1) The lead time between processes (raw materials, machining and assembly) was longer.
- (2) Each line in these processes was optimized separately; the system for achieving one integrated flow was weak.
- (3) The rules for stopping production were not clearly defined.
- (4) Production was based on estimated orders.

As a method of resolving this problem, a "half-shift firm order production system" was implemented under which a half shift (about four hours) was adopted as one control span.

Assembly process: Assembles and ships only the quantity ordered from the customer.

Machining process: Machines and supplies to the assembly process in advance only the quantity ordered from the customer, allowing only the lead time needed for assembly; requests only the necessary quantity from the raw materials process.

Raw materials process: Supplies to the machining process only the quantity requested by machining and replenishes only the quantity of materials used.

In this way, the lead time between processes was shortened based on clear rules for carrying out and stopping production in each process. Although a lead time difference still exists with the competitor, it has been reduced by approximately two days.

In implementing the actual activities, 12 priority items were defined, including the promotion of efforts to strengthen production foundations based on TPM activities (e.g., reducing equipment troubles, reducing quality defects and adhering to the 5 S's), coordinating production with shipments and adopting half-shift production. These activities have been promoted on all lines (approximately 400 altogether).

4.3. 標準化について

従来の改善活動の弱点は、標準化の仕組みが不充分のため、環境の変化が起こるとせっかく改善したラインが後戻りすることが多々あった。また、合併により、生産のやり方が異なっている部分もあるので、これを機に全社統一の「ものづくり」を実施することが重要であると認識している.

活動の進捗,標準化の全社展開の方法をFig.4に図示する.

4.3. Standardization

A weak point of previous improvement activities was that the system for standardizing procedures was not sufficient. Consequently, when operating environment changes occurred, lines that had been expressly improved often retrogressed to their previous condition. Moreover, there were aspects where production methods differed on account of the merger with TransTechnology Co., Ltd.. It was recognized that JEPS should be used as a good opportunity to implement unified manufacturing practices throughout the company.

The approaches taken to advance and standardize these activities everywhere in the company are shown in Fig. 4.

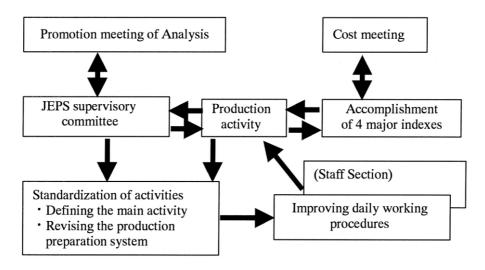


Fig. 4 Management of activities

5. 事例紹介

具体的な改善事例について,以下説明する. また,全体像を明らかにするためにFig.5に鳥瞰図を示す.

5.1. 出荷便合わせ生産

5.1.1.従来の生産方式との違い.

客先から受注した分(出荷計画分)だけ製品を組立する(従来は,生産の平準化などの目的のために見込みで製品在庫を生産し,出荷していた.) 5.1.2.効果

- ・出荷場での製品の入れ替え作業が無くなる.
- ・ムダな製品在庫が無くなる. (不要な容器が無くなる.)
- ・組立ラインでの直行率が大幅に向上した.
- ・組立着手から出荷までのリードタイムが短くなる.
- ・間接業務の組立計画作成がなくなる.

5. Examples of Activities

This section explains some concrete examples of the improvement activities implemented. Figure 5 is a bird's-eye view of JEPS that shows an overall picture of the activities involved.

5.1. Production coordinated with shipments

5.1.1. Differences from the previous production system

Only the quantity of products ordered by the customer (planned shipment quantity) is assembled. Previously, products were produced, kept in stock and shipped on the basis of estimates for the purpose of leveling production volumes, among other reasons.

5.1.2.Effects

- The work of replacing products in the shipping area has been eliminated.
- Useless product inventories have been eliminated, thereby doing away with unnecessary containers.
- The rate of straight-through shipments from assembly lines has been substantially improved.
- Lead time from the start of assembly to shipment has been shortened.
- The need to prepare an assembly plan for indirect work has been eliminated.

Desired JEPS Production System

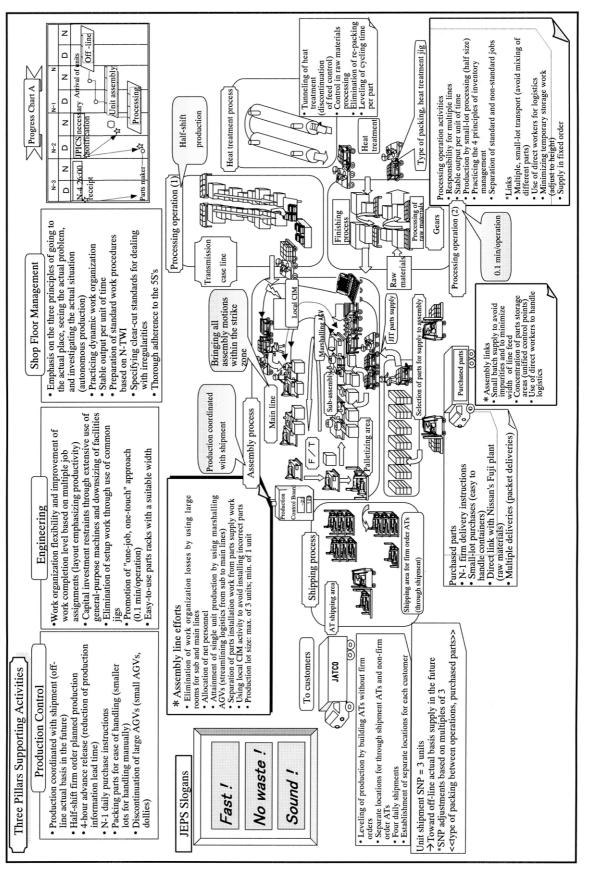


Fig. 5

5.2. 1/2シフト生産

5.2.1.従来の生産方式との違い.

主として加工ラインでの活動になるが,後工程で次の1/2シフト(4時間)後に組み立てられる分だけを1/2シフト前に着手して生産する(複数の機種があっても全ての機種を生産する.)

(従来は後工程である組立ラインで使われた部品を 補填する在庫補填生産が主流であった.)

5.2.2.効果

- ・加工ラインエンドの在庫置き場のエリアは最大1/2シフト分だけになり 生産エリアへ有効活用できる.
- 加工着手から組立着手までのリードタイムが短くなる。
- ・不要な在庫管理が無くなる.

このように組立,加工ラインでの確定受注生産の模式図をFig. 6に示す.

5.2. Half-shift production

5.2.1. Differences from the previous production system

This activity mainly applies to the machining lines. Only the quantity to be assembled during the next half shift (four hours) in the downstream assembly process is produced in advance during the previous half shift. Parts for all transmission models are produced even if multiple models are involved.

Previously, the main method was to produce parts for replenishing the inventories of parts used on the assembly lines that constitute the subsequent process.

5.2.2.Effects

- The parts storage area at the end of the machining lines stores only the quantity for half-shift production at the most, enabling more of the area to be used effectively for production.
- Lead time from the start of machining to the start of assembly has been reduced.
- Unnecessary inventory management work has been eliminated.

A model of this firm order production system used on the machining and assembly lines is shown in Fig. 6.

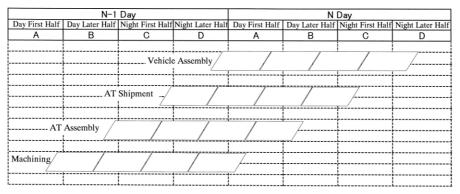


Fig. 6 Model of firm order production system

以上が,各工程別の生産のしくみ改善の事例で あるが,工程内の改善事例を以下に紹介する.

5.3.0.10分/工程の生産方式

従来からも手作業ラインの改善は実施されてきたが,各ライン共通の作業効率を工程毎に評価する尺度が存在していなかった.

当活動では、1工程当たりの作業動作単位を分解し、その原単位を設定する事により、ライン、工程を共通尺度で評価できるようになってきた.具体的には、その原単位を1工程当たり0.10分の手作業(次工程への歩行を含む)と設定する事である.

つまり,月10,000台の生産台数ならば,生産タクトは2.0分,この場合,2.0分/0.10分/台=20台となり,20台の設備を一人で稼働させることができることになる.

これは,従来の自動化投資の概念を変えるものである.

また,生産変動に対する編成の自由度も向上し, 主として加工ラインへ適用している.

具体例をFig.7に示す.

The foregoing examples concern the improvements made to the production system for each process. The following are examples of improvements made within the processes.

5.3. Production system of 0.10 min/operation

Improvements to the manual assembly lines had also been implemented previously, but there was no yardstick for evaluating work efficiencies common to each line on the basis of individual operations.

In this activity, the units of work motions were analyzed for each individual operation and a basic unit was set, making it possible to evaluate the lines and operations on the basis of a common yardstick. Specifically, a basic unit of 0.10 min per operation was set for manual tasks, including walking to the next operation.

In other words, for a production volume of 10,000 units per month, the production cycle time is 2.0 min. In this case, 2.0 min/0.10 min/unit = 20 units. This means that one employee can operate the equipment for producing 20 units.

This system has changed the previous concept of investment in automation. It also provides greater freedom for organizing work teams to cope with production fluctuations. It has mainly been applied to the machining lines. A specific example of this approach is shown in Fig. 7.

0.1 min/operation Manual line operation/Hour (before revision)

	Picking	Removing	Installing			
Line	Parts	Parts	Parts	Switching	Walking	Total
1	0.02	0.08	0.06	0.03	0.07	0.26
2	0	0.03	0.03	0.02	0.05	0.13
3	0	0.08	0.07	0.03	0.07	0.25
4	0.02	0.03	0.03	0.02	0.05	0.15
5	0	0.08	0.07	0.03	0.07	0.25
6	0	0.03	0.05	0.02	0.08	0.18
7	0	0.08	0.06	0.03	0.07	0.24
8	0	0.03	0.03	0.02	0.08	0.16
9	0	0.08	0.06	0.03	0.07	0.24
10	0.02	0.03	0.03	0.02	0.04	0.14
Total	0.06	0.55	0.49	0.25	0.65	2
Average	0.006	0.055	0.049	0.025	0065	0.2

Required cycle time = 1 min/unit

Manpower = Total time/required cycle time = 2 min/1 (min/unit) = 2



Shorten the distances between the lines Fixing the location for picking parts, etc.

	Picking	Removing	Installing			
Line	Parts	Parts	Parts	Switching	Walking	Total
1	0.02	0	0.04	0	0.04	0.1
2	0	0	0.03	0	0.05	0.08
3	0	0	0.06	0	0.05	0.11
4	0	0	0.03	0	0.04	0.07
5	0	0	0.07	0	0.03	0.1
6	0	0	0.05	0	0.05	0.1
7	0	0	0.06	0	0.04	0.1
8	0	0	0.03	0	0.05	0.08
9	0	0	0.06	0	0.04	0.1
10	0.02	0	0.03	0	0.04	0.09
Total	0.04	0	0.46	0	0.43	0.93
Average	0.004	0	0.046	0	0.043	0.093

Required cycle time = 1 min/unit

Manpower = Total timer/required cycle time = 0.93 min/1 (min/unit) = 1

Fig. 7 Analysis sheet of work task times

6. まとめ

以上,JEPS活動について述べてきたが,まだまだ企業文化として「ジヤトコ流ものづくり」の考え方が定着しているものでは無く,まさにこれからが正念場といったところである.また,原理原則や理想とする考え方や理論を行動や仕事に置き換えてゆくことがJEPS活動であると言える.

このJEPS活動を合い言葉に全社が共通のベクトルで能力発揮できるように推進していきたい.

最後に活動の推進にあたり,高橋シニアアドバイザーをはじめ,日産自動車(株)購買技術部の皆様に多大なるご指導をいただいておりますことをここに深く感謝致します.

6. Conclusion

The foregoing discussion has outlined the JEPS activity. Yet this concept of the "JATCO way of manufacturing" is still far from taking root in our corporate culture. The true acid test still lies ahead. In essence, the JEPS activity involves translating the principles and ideals underlying this concept and theory into actual behavior and working procedures.

With the JEPS activity as our slogan, we want to promote efforts that enable everyone in the company to direct their capabilities toward a common vector.

Finally, we would like to thank A. Takahashi, Specialist Contract, and the other members of Nissan Motor Co.'s DOUKISEISAN Promotion and Supplier Support Group for their valuable instruction and advice concerning the promotion of this activity.

Authors



Katsumi MAKINO



Hiroyoshi OGAWA

ダウンサイジング版新図面管理システムについて

Downsized version of The New Drawing Management System

高田 仁* Hitoshi TAKADA

抄 録 図面管理システムはホストコンピュータ上の CADデータを管理するため, JUMPS(JATCO Unit Material Parts System)と連携してマスタ図面の貸出し/返却などを行うために開発されたシステムである.

本稿では,CADダウンサイジングの実施,JEDRIS (JATCO Engineering Data Retrieval Improvement Share)の 開発にあわせて,ダウンサイジング版新図面管理システムを開発したので,本システムの導入の背景,特徴や JEDRISとの関係などについて紹介する.

Summary The Drawing Management System was developed for managing CAD data on the host computer in collaboration with JUMPS (JATCO Unit Material Parts System) in order to facilitate the borrowing and returning of master drawings. A downsized version of the Drawing Management System has been newly developed along with downsizing the CAD system and developing JEDRIS (JATCO Engineering Data Retrieval Improvement Share). This paper mainly describes the background behind the development of this new version, its features and the connection with JEDRIS.

1.はじめに

1.1. 背景

当社でのCAD(Computer Aided Design)の利用は, '85年に導入したホストコンピュータでのCADAMからスタートした.さらに,その3年後にはCAD-IIを導入し,これらのCADシステムを主要CADとして併用してきた.

'91年に,日産自動車(株)殿がCADAMを全面的に廃止しCAD-IIに統合したことから,当社でもCAD-IIへの全面的な移行を計画したが,機能性,操作性,データ変換などの問題により実現できなかった.実現できたのは,ダウンサイジングを完了した'00年で,その間は2つのCADシステムを併用せざるを得なかった.

1. Introduction

1.1. Background

The use of computer-aided design (CAD) at JATCO began with CADAM on the host computer that was installed in 1985. Three years later, CAD-II was introduced and these two CAD systems were subsequently used in parallel as our principal CAD tools.

In 1991, Nissan Motor Co., Ltd. integrated its CAD systems to CAD-II, completely discontinuing the use of CADAM. Accordingly, we also planned to switch entirely to CAD-II, but that was not accomplished on account of certain issues concerning functionality, operating ease and data conversion. It was finally accomplished when downsizing of the system was completed in 1985, but in the meantime, we were obliged to use the two systems in parallel.

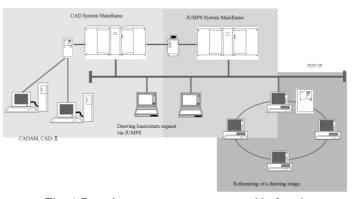


Fig. 1 Drawing management system (before)

情報システム部

一方、図面管理システムの取り組みについては、 '85年にCADシステムを導入した直後は、図面管理者がマスタデータベース(DB)とワークDB間の図面データを移動させることにより、人手を介した図面の管理を行っていた.その後、CADシステムの普及に伴い人手での管理は限界に達してきたため、'92年にCAD系及び事務系の両ホストコンピュータ間で連携を取り、JUMPSからの指示により、自動的に図面の貸出し・返却などができる図面管理システムを開発した.あわせて、光ディスク装置に登録する図面イメージデータを作成することにより、過去の図面イメージを光ディスクより検索することが可能となった.(Fig. 1)

1.2. システム化の経緯

'95年より, CAD運用経費削減の手段としてCADシステムのダウンサイジングとCAD-IIのダウンサイズ版である CAD-IIへの統合が検討された.しかし,全ての端末を一斉にワークステーションに切り替えることや,全てのCADAM図面を CAD-II にデータ変換することは不可能に近いことから当初は,端末のリプレースに合わせてホストCADとワークステーション型CADの双方が利用できる端末を導入しながら,徐々にインフラを整備していった.

「'95~'97年情報化計画」の策定に当たり、PDM (Product Data Management)への取り組みが推進され、第1ステップとして設計・技術情報の共有化を目指してJEDRISと新しい図面管理システムの開発に着手した。'97年11月のJEDRIS本番運用開始に合わせて、一部のプロジェクトを対象として CAD-IIの図面管理が開始された.その後、徐々にその適用プロジェクトの拡大やインフラの整備、システムへの機能追加を図った.また、当社での次期CADシステムについても検討が行われ、3次元設計はI-DEASに、2次元設計は CAD-IIおよびI-DEASにすることとした.これにより、インフラが整備された'00年3月にCAD-II, CADAMを廃止し、各々CAD-II及びI-DEASへの全面的な移行を完了した.

CAD-II及びI-DEASへの全面的な移行を完了した。同時にダウンサイジング版新図面管理システムの適用を開始した。

1.3. システム化のねらい

当社における P D M の定義は 『「図面情報 (CAD)」と「製品仕様情報」を核に、それに関連する文書情報も含めた商品に関わる情報をお互いに関連付け、データベース化し、設計者が常に最新の正しい状態で自由に参照し、互いにやり取りができる仕組みを作ること。』とし、これを実現するため、以下をシステム化のねらいとした。

As for our Drawing Management System, on the other hand, following the introduction of the CAD systems in 19??, drawing administrators were managing drawings manually by transferring drawing data between the master drawing database and work databases. Subsequently, with the further penetration of the CAD systems, manual management of drawings reached its limit, so a Drawing Management System was developed in 1992 that was linked to both the CAD system host computer and the host computer for administrative work. That system made it possible to issue instructions via JUMPS for automatically borrowing and returning drawings. In addition, drawing image data were created and registered in an optical disk storage system, making it possible to retrieve previous drawing images from an optical disk (Fig. 1).

1.2. System development history

As a measure for reducing CAD system operating costs, a study was launched in 1995 to downsize the CAD systems and integrate them with aCAD-II, the downsized version of CAD-II. However, it was nearly impossible to switch the terminals to workstations all at once and to convert all the CADAM drawings to aCAD-II system data. Initially, therefore, the infrastructure was gradually put in place by replacing the existing terminals with ones that could be used both with the CAD system mainframe and as CAD workstations.

In carrying out the information management plan for 1995 to 1997, an effort was made to facilitate product data management (PDM). As the first step, development work was initiated on JEDRIS and a new Drawing Management System, with the aim of sharing design and engineering information. Together with the start of full-scale operation of JEDRIS in November 1997, management of aCAD-II drawings was launched for some development projects. Subsequently, steps were steadily taken to expand the range of application to other projects, to put in place the associated infrastructure and to add further functions to the system.

A study was also undertaken of the company's nextgeneration CAD systems. It was decided to adopt I-DEAS for 3-D design and aCAD-II and I-DEAS for 2-D design. As result, when the infrastructure was fully in place, the use of CAD-II and CADAM was discontinued in March 2000, and a complete switchover was made to each aCAD-II and I-DEAS system, respectively. Simultaneously, application of the downsized version of the new Drawing Management System was initiated.

1.3. System development aims

Our definition of PDM is "to create a product information database centered on CAD drawing data and production specification data, as well as including all other product-related documents and information, and to show their interrelationships, so as to build a system that enables designers to reference product data freely at any time in its latest and correct state and to be able to exchange the data with one another." To accomplish that, the following aims were set for system development.

- ・図面,手配情報,部品情報の検索環境の向上を図ること.
- ・必要な情報はできる限りひとつの画面上から 得られるよう,設計者にとっての使いやすさ を考慮すること.
- ・セキュリティが十分に考慮された図面管理を 行うこと.
- ・プラットフォームに拘わらず, すべてのワークステー ション(UNIX, NT), PCにおいて同一のサービスが提供できること.
- ・JEDRISと図面管理システムが違和感なく一つ のメニューから利用できるようにすること.

これらを実現させるため,新図面管理システムは, JEDRISのサブシステムとして開発することとした. (Fig. 2)

- To improve the environment for retrieving drawings, information on related arrangements and preparations and parts information.
- To take into account ease of use by the designers so that as much necessary information as possible could be obtained on a single terminal screen.
- To manage drawings with ample consideration given to security.
- To provide the same service to all workstations (UNIX and NT) and PCs regardless of the platform.
- To be able to use both JEDRIS and the Drawing Management System from one single menu without any unnatural feeling.

It was decided to develop the new Drawing Management System as a subsystem of JEDRIS in order to accomplish these aims (Fig. 2).

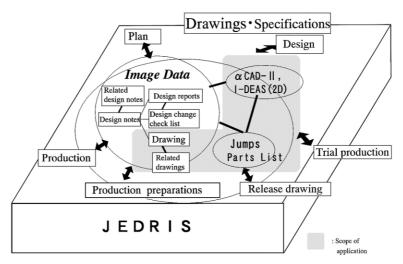


Fig. 2 Position of the new drawing management system in JEDRIS

2.機能概要

2.1. 新図面管理システム概要

2.1.1. 既存図面管理システムにおける問題点

- ・マスタ図面の借用に際しては,設計者は以下の とおり,複数の端末に移動して作業を行う必要 があった.
 - ①JUMPS端末にて部品番号や図面番号を検索
 - ②光ディスク端末にて図面内容を確認
 - ③JUMPS端末にて該当図面の借用依頼
 - ④CAD端末にて作図作業
- ・図面の貸出しがJUMPSで行われるため, JUMPS 運用時間外(19:00以降)は図面の借用ができな かった。

2. Functional Overview

2.1. Overview of new Drawing Management System

- 2.1.1. Problems with the existing system
 - As indicated below, designers had to go and perform operations on several different terminals in order to borrow a master drawing.
 - ① Retrieve the part number and drawing number at a JUMPS terminal.
 - ② Check the drawing details at an optical disk terminal.
 - Make a request to borrow the desired drawing at a JUMPS terminal.
 - Work on the drawing on a CAD terminal.
 - Since the borrowing of drawings was done via JUMPS, it was not possible to borrow drawings when JUMPS was not operating (i.e., after 19:00).

- ・CADワークDBは部署毎に共有のDBであったため、図面の作成者が特定できない上、誰でも参照、修正ができるため管理上問題があった.
- ・管理対象図面がCADAM, CAD-IIに限定され, その他の図面は管理対象外であった.
- ・ホストコンピュータのDB容量不足と,レスポンスの低下によりユーザ利用環境が著しく悪化していた.

2.1.2. 新図面管理システムの特徴

上記問題点を解決できる,新図面管理システム を開発した.その特徴は次のとおりである.

- ① 使いやすさの向上 本システムをJEDRISに組み込むことにより、図
 - 本システムをJEDRISに組み込むことにより、図面情報、手配情報、部品情報の検索と表示、図面の原図借用依頼およびCAD図面修正作業がひとつの端末上で行うことができる(Fig. 3)
- ② 図面貸出し運用時間の拡大 全ての図面管理はJEDRISにて行われるため, JUMPS運用時間外(24時まで)でも利用可能となった.
- ③ セキュリティの向上 ワークDBはすべて個人毎のワークロケーション での個人管理となり、端末利用においても個人 毎のユーザIDによる管理とし、セキュリティ対 策を行った.さらに、セキュリティを要する技 術情報についてはユーザIDごとに検索権限を設 定することで、セキュリティ対策を徹底した.
- ④ システム拡張性の向上 客先が増えるに従い , CAD-II , I-DEASばかり でなく , CATIA , Pro/ENGINEERやEXCELなど , さまざまフォーマットのデータを管理する必要 性が生じてきたことから , どのようなCADデー タであっても管理ができるよう柔軟性を持たせた .
- ⑤ システムレスポンスの安定化 CADデータベースとCADシステムの分散化により常に安定したレスポンスを確保した.

2.2. 業務フロー

- ① 設計者は, JEDRISによりマスタ図面を借用する.
- ② 設計者より,図面承認者へ承認申請を行う.(図面移管)
- ③ 承認サイン入力後,図面管理者にリリース依頼を行う.
- ④ JUMPSでのリリース情報を取得し、整合チェック後、マスタDBに返却される。
- ⑤ 同タイミングにて,返却図面よりイメージデー タが作成され登録される (Fig. 4)

- The creators of drawings could not be identified because the CAD work database in each department was shared in common. In addition, there was a management problem in that anyone could reference and change a drawing.
- The scope of drawing management was limited to CADAM and CAD-II drawings and other drawings were outside that management scope.
- The user environment had deteriorated markedly owing to insufficient database capacity on the host computer and to a decline in responsiveness.

2.1.2. Features of new Drawing Management System

The features of the new downsized version of the Drawing Management System that was developed to resolve the aforementioned problems are outlined below.

- Improvement of operating ease Incorporating this new system within JEDRIS has now made it possible to perform all the operations on one terminal, including retrieving and displaying drawing information, information on arrangements and preparations and parts information, making a request to borrow master drawings and revising CAD drawings (Fig. 3).
- ② Extension of time frame for borrowing drawings Since all drawing management work is done on JEDRIS, drawings can be borrowed even when JUMPS is not operating (until 12:00 midnight).
- Improvement of security
 Employees personally manage the work database at their own workstation. As a security measure, the use of terminals is managed on the basis of a user ID issued to each individual. Moreover, with regard to technical information that requires strict security, the scope of authorized access can be set separately for each user ID. These measures ensure comprehensive security.
- Improvement of system expandability
 Along with the growth of our customer base, it has become necessary to manage data in many different formats, including CATIA, Pro/ENGINEER, Excel and others, in addition to aCAD-II and I-DEAS. Consequently, the new system was given the flexibility to manage all sorts of CAD data regardless of the format.
- Stabilized system response Stable response at all times has been ensured through a distributed arrangement of the CAD database and CAD systems.

2.2. Work flow

A typical work flow is illustrated in Fig. 4.

- A designer borrows a master drawing via JEDRIS.
- The designer revises the drawing and then requests a drawing approver to approve the revised drawing (drawing transfer).
- The approver initials the revised drawing to approve it and then requests the drawing administrator to release the drawing.
- The administrator receives the release information via JUMPS, checks the revision made and then returns the revised drawing to the database.
- At the same time, image data are created from the returned drawing and registered in the storage system.

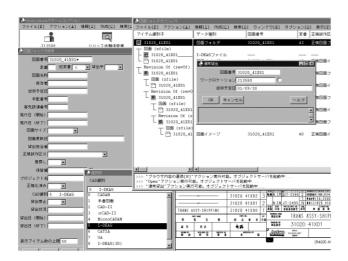


Fig. 3 Drawing reference ~ image display ~ a request to borrow the drawing

2.3. システム構成

これらの機能を実現するための機器構成をFig. 5に示す.

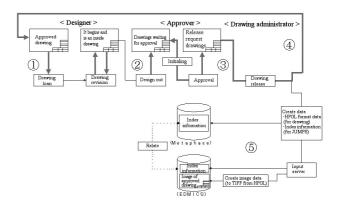


Fig. 4 The flow of business

2.3. System configuration

The configuration of the equipment used to accomplish these functions is shown in Fig. 5.

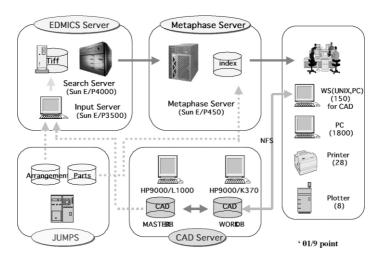


Fig. 5 System constitution

3. 今後の課題

3.1. 管理データの拡充

近年,当社でも試作工数や型製作等のコスト削減,品質の向上と開発期間短縮を図るため,急速に3次元設計が普及している.これらの3次元データの管理を行うにはPDMとの連携が必須となり,図面レス,3次元データでの手配のしくみを検討しながら早急に対応を図る必要がある.

3. Future Tasks

3.1. Improvement of drawing management data

There has been a rapid penetration of 3-D design work at our company in recent years in connection with efforts to reduce costs, such as by reducing prototyping man-hours and die/mold manufacture, to improve product quality and to shorten development lead times. Managing 3-D design data requires a link with PDM. This issue needs to be dealt with as quickly as possible in the course of proceeding with studies concerning drawing-less operations and a system for making arrangements on the basis of 3-D design data.

3.2. 利用環境の拡大

現在,本システムの利用は本社地区に限定されており,厚木地区やその他地区においての利用はできないため,全ての設計拠点にて利用できるよう,統合されたCAD環境の整備が必要である.

3.3. 適用範囲の拡大

設計拠点の拡大に伴い,遠隔地間でのデジタル モックアップを利用したコラボレーションのでき る環境整備が必要である.

なお,上記課題については'01年度より取り組み を開始し,現在計画案を作成中である.

4.終わりに

最後に,本システムを開発するにあたりご協力 をいただきました(株)富士総合研究所,デジタル プロセス(株)および,社内関係者の方々にお礼申 し上げます.

3.2. Expansion of the use environment

The use of this system is currently limited to the headquarters area, and it cannot be used in the Atsugi area or in other places. Consequently, there is a need to put in place an integrated CAD environment so that the system can be used in all design offices.

3.3. Expansion of scope of application

As a result of the expansion of our design offices, there is a need to construct a system capable of supporting collaborative work at geographically distributed locations using digital mockups.

Activities were launched in FY 2001 to address the above-mentioned tasks and an action plan is now being prepared.

4. Closing Note

Lastly, the author would like to thank Fujita Research Institute Corporation, Digital Process Ltd. and various individuals at JATCO for their invaluable cooperation in connection with the development of this system.

Author



Hitoshi TAKADA

'01フランクフルト・東京モーターショウへの出展

Exhibitions at the Frankfurt and Tokyo Motor Shows

小野田 司*

Tsukasa ONODA

抄録 '01年開催のフランクフルト及び東京モーターショウに出展し,『Intelligent Powertrain System Supplier』として,先進技術・新商品をPRした. 両展示会における駆動系技術の動向及び当社の展示内容について解説する.

Summary We presented exhibitions at the 2001 Frankfurt and Tokyo Motor Shows to publicize our advanced technologies and new products as an intelligent powertrain system supplier. This paper reviews the trends in powertrain technologies at the two motor shows and describes our exhibits.

1.はじめに

21世紀幕開けの国際モーターショウとして開催された欧州最大規模の第59回IAAフランクフルト・モーターショウ(注1, Fig. 1),第35回東京モーターショウ(注2)が開催され,世界の自動車・部品メーカが次世代技術,新商品の発表・展示を競った.

- (注1)2001年9月11日から9月23日開催.出展社数約1,070社,内日系部品メーカ10社 入場者数約81万人.当社は1997年から3回目の参加.(Fig. 1)
- (注2) 01年10月24日から11月7日開催.出展社数約350社,入場者数127万人.



Fig. 1 Frankfurt Messe

Two international motor shows that heralded the dawn of the 21st century were the 59th IAA Frankfurt Motor Show (Fig. 1), Europe's largest automotive event, and the 35th Tokyo Motor Show. At these shows, the world's automakers and parts suppliers vied in announcing and exhibiting their next-generation technologies and new products.

- "Held September 11-23, 2001. Exhibiting companies numbered approximately 1,070, of which ten were Japanese parts suppliers. Attendance totaled some 810,000 visitors. JATCO participated for the third time since 1997.
- ² Held from October 24 to November 7, 2001. Exhibiting companies numbered approximately 350, and attendance totaled 1.27 million visitors.



Fig. 2 Compact cars with diesel engine

^{1.} Introduction

^{*} 第四営業部 Sales & Marketing Department No.4

2.トレンド

将来のドリームカーの出展は減り,自分達はこういう車を作りたいというプロトタイプが多く,既に車両を構成するユニット等の選定は進んだ段階にあるように思う.また,フォード,GM,ダイムラークライスラー,ルノー/日産等が各グループ単位で一貫したブランドイメージを訴求していた.

環境との共生への取り組みに関しては,燃料電池車を強調したカーメーカの展示は減り,そのかわり欧州では燃費の向上とCO2排出量が少なく高性能な新世代ディーゼル・エンジンを搭載した小型車(VWポロ,フォード フィエスタ等セグメントB)が目立つ.この背景として,近年 デイーゼル・エンジンの搭載率が急増('90年;13% '96年;23% '04年;38%の見込み)し,小型ディーゼル車の比率が高いカーメーカ(VW, PSA等)が売り上げを伸ばしていることによる. (Fig. 2)

ハイブリッド車に関しては日系メーカが紹介している程度のため、一般的には否定的な意見が多いが、今後の技術革新・コストの低減により拡大する可能性はある.逆に、東京では既販売、及び開発中のハイブリッド車の展示が目立つ.

また,欧州各社のフラグシップカーである,大型ハイテクカー(Fセグメント)として,15秒程度の瞬時にバリオルーフが開き,2シータ・オープンカーに早変わりするベンツ SL Class(5Lエンジン,マニュアルモード付き5速AT搭載),あらゆる操作を運転席で簡潔に操作(シフトバイ・ワイヤー等)できるBMW 7シリーズも目を引く.

駆動系部品メーカからは、欧州ではステップ式自動変速機の多段化(4速・5速から6速化), CVT, マニュアルトランスミッションの自動化(AMT/ロボタイズ)が出展されている.自動変速機は年々普及しつつあるが,長くMTが主流の市場であるため,上記のような様々なシステムが提案されている.(Fig. 3)

日本では、新しいCVTとして、ベルト式、ハーフ及び、フルトロイダル式CVTの新技術、ハイブリッド用トランスミッションが注目を集めた.

2. Trends

There were fewer exhibits of futuristic dream cars. Many prototype models were displayed that indicated the kinds of vehicles the manufacturers themselves wanted to build. It appeared that the prototypes had already progressed to the stage of selecting the constituent units making up the vehicles. In addition, Ford, GM, DaimlerChrysler, Renault/Nissan and other automotive groups emphasized their unified brand images on an individual group basis.

In the area of efforts to foster harmony with the environment, there were fewer automaker exhibits that showcased fuel cell cars. Instead, small cars powered by new-generation diesel engines featuring improved fuel economy and lower CO2 emissions were conspicuous in Europe, typified by the VW Polo, Ford Fiesta and other B-segment vehicles. One presumed reason for that is the rapid increase in the proportion of vehicles equipped with a diesel engine in recent years, which rose from 13% in 1990 to 23% in 1996 and is projected to reach 38% in 2004. Automakers with a high percentage of small diesel engine cars in their lineup, such as VW, PSA and others, have been expanding their unit sales (Fig. 2).

With Japanese automakers being about the only ones that have rolled out hybrid vehicles so far, there are many negative views of this technology in general. Yet there is the potential for greater expansion of hybrids through further technological innovations and cost reductions. In Tokyo, on the other hand, exhibits of hybrid vehicles already released or under development were prominent.

The large high-tech flagship cars (F-Segment) of the European automakers attracted much attention. These included the Mercedes-Benz SL Class equipped with a vario-roof that opens quickly in about 15 seconds to transform the two-seat coupe into a convertible instantly. This model is fitted with a 5-liter engine and a 5-speed AT with a manual shift mode. Another example is the BMW 7 Series featuring shift-by-wire and enabling the driver to perform all sorts of operations easily from the driver's seat.

Exhibits by powertrain system suppliers at the Frankfurt show included stepped ATs with speed ranges expanded from four or five speeds to six, CVTs and automated manual transmissions (ATMs or robotized gearboxes). Although the proportion of AT-equipped new cars has been increasing every year in Europe, the fact that MTs predominated the market for so long has led to various system proposals like those mentioned here (Fig. 3).

Exhibits that attracted attention in Tokyo included new CVT technologies, such as new belt-drive units and half- and full-toroidal CVTS, as well as transmissions designed for hybrid vehicles.



Fig. 3 Automated manual transmission

3. 当社出展のコンセプト

3.1. テーマ

当社の提唱する『Intelligent Powertrain System Supplier』思想の更なる具体化と,環境との共生・『燃費向上』を基軸としながら,最近のトレンドである『(若者狙いの)スポーツカー等走りの良さ』と『パワー競争の再燃』を当社出展のコンセプトに折り込んだ.

また,当社はFR車用5速AT,2リッタークラスのベルトCVT,トロイダルCVT等の量産化に世界で初めて成功した専門メーカであり,これらの技術をベースに次世代の多段AT・CVT・HEV用トランスミッションの開発,ABSやトラクションコントロール等の車両挙動や車外環境・ドライバ情報にも連動した駆動力マネージメントによる更なる最適化を訴求した.

3.2. ブース・デザイン

当社ブース位置が会場通路の遠距離から視認できるよう,電照の大型社名ロゴマークを2カ所に設置し,壁面も当社ロゴのシンボルカラーであるダークグリーンを基調としたものとした.

ブースは,カーメーカ等のお客様と落ち着いて懇談・プレゼンテーションができる会議室エリアと一般の来場者の方々が気軽に展示品を見学できるオープン・エリアの2つの機能に完全に分離した.

オープンエリアにはご来場の方々が足を止めやすくするように,通路側に各種のCVT作動モデルを配備し,中央奥側の青空をイメージした大型曲面の壁(企業理念図)の前に8台の静止モデルを配備した.今回はご来場の方々が順番に商品を見学できる動線を重視した仕様とした. (Fig. 4)



Fig. 4 JATCO booth

3. Concept of JATCO Exhibits

3.1. Theme

The central theme was to represent more concretely the company's expressed mission of being an intelligent powertrain system supplier along with our efforts to foster symbiosis with the environment and fuel economy improvements. The overall booth concept also embodied such ideas as the enjoyment of sports car driving, a recent trend aimed at younger users, and the revival of power competition.

As an AT/CVT specialist, JATCO was the world's first manufacturer to succeed in mass producing 5-speed ATs for rear-wheel-drive vehicle application, belt CVTs for use on 2.0-liter class cars and toroidal CVTs, among other products. Our exhibits emphasized the development of next-generation ATs with a greater number of speed ranges, CVTs and transmissions for HEV application, based on those cutting-edge technologies. They also illustrated further optimization of performance through powertrain management proactively linked to vehicle behavior control systems, such as ABS and traction control, as well as to the external environment and driver information systems.

3.2. Booth design

Large, electrically illuminated corporate logo signs were installed at two locations so that visitors walking along the aisle running through the venue could easily recognize the location of our booth from a distance. The booth walls had a dark green motif, which is the symbolic color of JATCO's logo (Fig. 4).

The booth was completely divided into two functional areas. One was a conference room area where discussions and presentations could be conducted with automakers and other customers in a composed atmosphere. The other was an open exhibition area where ordinary visitors could view the exhibits at their leisure.

Working CVT models were placed on the aisle side of the open exhibition area so that visitors would be more likely to stop and view the exhibits. Eight static models were positioned in front of a large curved wall, located in the center and designed in the image of the blue sky along with showing a diagram of our corporate philosophy. The booth was designed with emphasis on flow lines so that visitors could readily view the exhibits in turn.

4. プレス・ブリーフィング

国内外約60社以上の報道機関の方々が当社ブースに来られ,約20社の個別インタビュウに応じた.取材の内容は 1) 『グローバルサプライヤとしての当社の更なる発展計画』 2) 『新技術・新商品』に関するものに大別される .(Fig. 5)

前者は東京モーターショウ直前に発表された三菱自動車殿のAT・CVT事業の分社化に伴う当社との事業統合化検討により,世界トップレベルの生産台数を有する専門メーカ誕生に関して,一般紙・業界誌の期待・質問が寄せられた.また,後者は世界で初めて量産に成功したトロイダルCVT,小型乗用車から,大型車をカバーする次世代のベルト式CVTシリーズの取材は勿論のこと,日本市場を中心に普及しつつあるハイブリッド車への関心の高まりを反映して,特に,従来のトランスミッションのスペースでハイブリッド化できるI-HATシステムに興味が集まった.また,欧州ではコンパクトな6速ATへの質問が寄せられた.

国内では、『日経メカニカル』、海外では欧州自動車業界誌『Automotive News Europe』、『AutoTechnology』等に取り上げられ、モーターショウ終了後も展示商品に関する追加取材の依頼が国内外の複数の雑誌社から入った.

4. Press Briefing

Journalists from approximately 60 domestic and overseas media companies combined came to our booth for a press briefing, and separate interviews were arranged for approximately 20 companies. The interviews covered two broad subjects: (1) JATCO's plans for further growth as a global supplier and (2) new technologies and new products (Fig 5).

The first subject concerned the creation of a new AT/CVT specialist with one of the biggest production volumes in the world through the possible integration of our business with the AT/CVT business of Mitsubishi Motors Corporation (MMC). Just prior to the Tokyo Motor Show, it was announced that MMC would spin off its AT/CVT division into a separate company that might possibly merge with JATCO later. There were many questions and expectations about this possibility from general print media and automotive industry publications. The second subject naturally included questions about the toroidal CVT that we successfully mass-produced for the first time anywhere in the world and the next-generation belt CVT series for use on a variety of vehicles from small to large cars. Interest was also especially concentrated on the Integrated Hybrid Automatic Transmission (IHAT) system that enables a hybrid powertrain to be mounted in the space of an ordinary transmission. This reflected the growing interest in hybrid vehicles that are beginning to spread primarily in the Japanese market. Moreover, in Europe, there were questions about our compact 6-speed AT.

In Japan, there was coverage by Nikkei Mechanical, and the automotive industry magazines Automotive News Europe and AutoTechnology were among the publications that covered the exhibits in Europe. Even after the motor shows closed, there were additional requests for coverage of the exhibited products from a number of domestic and overseas magazines.



Fig. 5 Booth visitors

5. 展示品

5.1. 作動モデル

(1)自動モデル

トロイダルCVT: トルクコンバータ内に組み付けた 展示品用モータの駆動により,AT内部のパワーローラ4セットがロー側からハイ側に自動的に動き,滑らかな変速状態が視認できる. (高粘度の)油を介して動力を伝える逆転の発想に驚嘆の声が多い. (Fig. 6)

特に,搭載車両が販売されていない欧州でも,当社 ブース来場者には世界で最も進んだ変速機の技術 として,その存在は意外に良く知られており,更なる 変速比巾の拡大,トルクアップを望む声が多い.

また,ボタン操作による8段変速のマニュアルシフト機構をつけ,スポーティ走行への対応技術をPRした.



Fig. 6 Cutaway model of toroidal CVT

(2)手動モデル

エンジン駆動の代わりに入場者自らがハンドルを回し、CVT変速機構部のローとハイ側切り替えレバー動かす体験型モデル2台を設置し,変速原理の理解を深めた. (Fig. 7)

- 1)トロイダルCVTパワーローラ部
- 2) 金属ベルト・プーリ部

5. Exhibits

5.1. Working models

(1) Automatic model

Toroidal CVT: A display-use motor was incorporated into the torque converter to drive the four sets of power rollers in the CVT automatically from a low to a high speed ratio, enabling visitors to see its smooth shifting action (Fig 6). Many visitors expressed astonishment at the converse approach taken to transmit power via a high-viscosity fluid.

Even though the vehicle model on which this toroidal CVT is used is not sold in Europe, booth visitors were surprisingly widely aware of its existence as the most advanced transmission technology anywhere in the world. Many expressed wishes for a further expansion of the speed ratio range and an increase in torque capacity.

A manual shift mechanism was attached that enabled visitors to shift the toroidal CVT through eight speed ranges by pressing buttons. That device was effective in publicizing the capability of this technology to deliver sporty driving performance.



Fig. 7 Dynamic power roller model

(2) Manual models

Two CVT models were displayed that visitors themselves could operate by turning a handle in place of drive torque from an engine. The firsthand experience of moving a lever for switching the ratio change mechanism of the CVT between low and high ratios helped to deepen their understanding of the operating principle.

- 1) Power rollers of the toroidal CVT (Fig. 7)
- 2) Metal belt and pulley mechanism

5.2. 静止モデル

(1)ステップ式AT

- 1) 小型FF車用4速AT(JF404E (カットモデル) VWポロ / ルポに搭載され,欧州・日本市場で長い市場実績のあるコンパクト・軽量の4速AT
- 2)中型FR車用4速AT(JR405E (カットモデル) マツダ ボンゴ/フレンデイ等に搭載の最軽 量設計の4速AT
- 3)中大型FF車用5速AT(JF506E (カットモデル)
 JAGUAR X-Type / VW Golf/Land Rover Free
 Lander/MGRover Rover 75等に搭載の車両性能を
 最大限に引き出す最適ギア比を有する大トルク
 対応用5速AT
- 4)大型FR車用5速AT(JR507E (カットモデル) 世界トップレベルの変速性能・高効率・軽量 設計を実現し,日産シーマ / スカイライン搭載さ れた5速AT(Fig. 8)
- 5)大型FF車用6速AT(カットモデル)開発中 大トルク容量でありながら,Lepelletier system 採用によるコンパクトな形状により優れた搭載 性を実現し,超ワイドの変速比を有する6速AT.

5.2. Static models

- (1) Stepped AT
- Cutaway model of the JF404E 4-speed AT for compact front-wheel-drive cars

This compact, lightweight 4-speed AT has a long history of use in the European and Japanese markets and is fitted to the VW Polo and Lupo models.

2) Cutaway model of the JR405E 4-speed AT for midsize rear-wheel-drive cars

This 4-speed AT features one of the lightest designs in its class and is used on the Mazda Bongo Frendee, among other models.

 Cutaway model of the JF506E 5-speed AT for midsize to large front-wheel drive cars

This 5-speed AT has large torque capacity and optimum gear ratios for eliciting maximum vehicle performance. It is used on the Jaguar X-Type, VW Golf, Land Rover Free Lander and MG Rover Rover 75, among other cars.

4) Cutaway model of JR507E 5-speed AT for large rearwheel-drive cars

Used on the Nissan Cima and Skyline, this 5-speed AT (Fig. 8) ranks among the world's best in terms of its shifting performance, high efficiency and lightweight design.

5) Cutaway model of a 6-speed AT now under development for use on large front-wheel-drive cars

While providing large torque capacity, this 6speed AT adopts a Lepelletier gearset system to achieve a compact package with superior vehicle mountability and an ultra-wide gear ratio range.



Fig. 8 New 5-speed AT for RWD Vehicles



Fig. 9 Next-generation Belt CVTs

(2)ベルト式CVTシリーズ (外観モデル) 開発中 2リッタークラスCVTの長年の市場実績を基 に開発中の次世代型CVTのフルラインナップを 出展した. (Fig. 9)

更に,超ワイドな変速比巾とすることで,発進加速性能と燃費の両方を大幅に向上.

- 1)小型車用次世代CVT
- 2)中型車用次世代CVT
- 3)大型車用次世代CVT

(3)ハイブリッド用T/M

I-HATシステム(カットモデル)開発中

従来の自動変速機とほぼ同じスペースでエネルギ回生機能を持つ当社独自のハイブリッド・システム.遊星歯車の採用により,スタートクラッチやトルクコンバータを廃止し,モータは駆動・発電兼用の小型化に成功.特に,日本市場でのニーズの高まりにより,将来,駆動系のひとつの柱となるハイブリッド用T/Mに一般来場者の方々の関心が極めて高い. (Fig. 10)

6. まとめ

1) 東京・フランクフルトモーターショウ共,従来のような燃料電池車等を主体としたカーメーカの展示は減り、各グループ会社で共通化するプラットフォームをベースとする量産モデルの展示が増えた.



Fig. 10 I-HAT

(2) Exterior models of a belt CVT series now under development

The full lineup of next-generation belt CVTs now under development was displayed (Fig. 9). Based on our many years of field experience with 2-liter class CVTs, these new belt CVTs achieve an ultra-wide speed ratio range as well as substantial improvements in both start-off acceleration and fuel economy.

- 1) Next-generation belt CVT for small car use
- 2) Next-generation belt CVT for midsize car use
- 3) Next-generation belt CVT for large car use
- (3) Cutaway model of the IHAT system being developed as a hybrid vehicle transmission

The IHAT system is JATCO's unique hybrid technology that incorporates an energy regeneration function, yet it installs in nearly the same space as a conventional AT (Fig. 10). The start-off clutch and torque converter have been discontinued by adopting a planetary gearset, and a small motor has been successfully developed that doubles as a power source and a generator. Owing to growing needs in the Japanese market in particular, general visitors expressed an exceptionally strong interest in this transmission for use on hybrid vehicles, which are expected to be a mainstream propulsion system in the future.

6. Recap

 At both the Tokyo and Frankfurt Motor Shows, there were fewer automaker exhibits that centered on fuel cell vehicles and the like, in contrast to the situation in previous years. There were more exhibits of volume-production models built on platforms shared in common among the companies of individual corporate groups.

- 2) 地球規模での環境・燃費規制の強化に伴うトランスミッションの高効率化・軽量化の要請の高まりと共に、スポーツカー等の走りの楽しさを追求する2極化が見られる。また、カーメーカ自身が他社とのトランスミッションの差別化をPRした展示は減り、共通のミッションをアウトソーシングする傾向にある。
- 3) '80年代頃から燃費・変速性能向上のニーズの高まりと技術革新による電子制御化,ロックアップ化・4速化, '90年代の5速化,ベルトCVT化,更に,近年の急激な技術革新による多様なトランスミッションへの期待と驚嘆の声が多い.その中で,当社はIntelligent Powertrain System SupplierとしてトロイダルCVT,次世代のベルト式CVT,5速・6速の多段AT, I-HAT(HEV)と先進的な商品を展示し,カーメーカ,及び自動車産業の方々を中心に技術力の高さと商品力を訴求することができた.
- 4) 今回の当社ブースは一般の来場者の方々が入りやすく、視察しやすい動線とした。前回に引き続き、欧米の博物館のコンセプトを取り入れ、来場者が自ら新機構のトランスミッションの機構・原理を理解できる体験型作動モデルを配備し、高い評価をプレス関係者等から頂くことができた。

7. 最後に

今回フランクフルトモーターショウのプレスデー初日に発生した米国での同時多発テロの影響により,華やかなレセプションの中止,例年にない警備体制等,緊張感の中での出展となった.世界有数のカーメーカ,報道機関のご来賓をはじめとして,多くの一般来場者の方々に当社ブースにお立ち寄り頂き,また,長期間の出展企画・展示品の諸準備に携わって頂いた関連会社,共同で出展したジヤトコ・ヨーロッパ,及び,社内関連部門のご協力・ご尽力に対して,感謝の意を表します.

- 2) Transmission exhibits tended to fall into two broad groups. One reflected rising demands for higher efficiency and lighter weight accompanying the tighter environmental and fuel economy regulations being adopted worldwide, and the other group pursued driving pleasure in sports car and other applications. The automakers themselves presented fewer exhibits aimed at publicizing how their transmissions differ from those of other companies. Instead, a trend was seen toward the outsourcing of common transmissions.
- 3) Rising needs for improved fuel economy and shifting performance beginning from around the 1980s spawned technological innovations that led to electronic controls, lockup operation and the emergence of 4-speed ATs. The 1990s saw the development of 5-speed ATs and belt CVTs. Moreover, the rapid pace of technological innovation in recent years has created a wide variety of transmissions toward which many show visitors expressed their amazement and expectations.

Against this backdrop, JATCO displayed its advanced products as an intelligent powertrain system supplier, typified by the toroidal CVT, next-generation belt CVTs, 5- and 6-speed ATs and the IHAT system for HEV application. These exhibits emphasized the high levels of our technological capabilities and product appeal, especially to automaker representatives and other people in the automotive industry.

4) Our booth at these two shows was designed with flow lines that made it easy for ordinary visitors to enter and view the exhibits. As at the previous shows, the booth adopted the concept of a western-style museum. Handson working models were displayed that enabled visitors to experience firsthand and readily understand the operating principles and mechanisms of new transmission systems. Media people and others voiced high praise for these exhibits.

7. Concluding Remarks

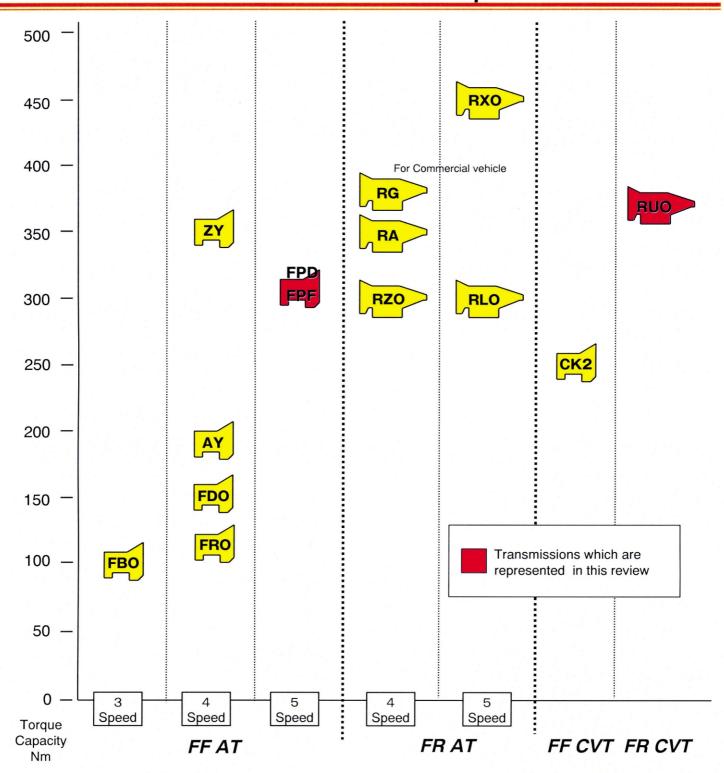
The terrorist attacks that occurred in the U.S. on the first day (press day) of the Frankfurt Motor Show led to the cancellation of gala receptions, the imposition of a strict security system not seen in recent years and other measures that gave the event a tense atmosphere. Our booth was visited by representatives of the world's leading automakers, media people and large numbers of general visitors. The author would like to thank many individuals at affiliated companies for their help over many months with the planning and preparation of the exhibits. Thanks are also due JATCO Europe GmbH for jointly staging the exhibition at the Frankfurt show and many departments within the company for their valuable cooperation and assistance.

Author



Tsukasa ONODA

Product Line-up





JAGUAR向けインテリジェント5速AT JF506E-L(FPD)の紹介

Introducing the JF506E-L(FPD) Smart 5-speed AT for Jaguar Application

吉田 友久*

Tomohisa YOSHIDA

抄 録 JF506E-LはJF506Eで初の高級車メーカへの適用となった.そのため目標性能が高度化され,様々な未経験の要求を受けた.各種の新開発を行ってこのJAGUARの要求に応えることができた.ここではその成果について紹介する.

Summary The FPD is the first JF506E series model to be used on a luxury car. Consequently, the target performance had to be raised, and a variety of unprecedented requests had to be satisfied. Jaguar's requirements were met by developing various new technologies. This paper describes the results obtained in this regard.

1.はじめに

JF506E-L型5速自動変速機(AT)はJF506Eとしては4社目のカーメーカへの適用機種で,約2年の短期間で開発され,昨年(01年)欧州,北米,日本などで発売されたJAGUAR X-TYPE(Fig. 1)に搭載された.X-TYPEはJAGUAR初のコンパクト・プレミアムカーで,JAGUARの伝統的なドライビングを継承するためトラクション4と呼ばれる全輪駆動システムを備えている.

JF506Eとしては初のガソリン3.0L適用となり,高トルク,高回転での耐久性を確保するため各部位の強化を行った.

また,ラグジャリーカーにふさわしい変速性能を得るため各種の新制御を導入した.さらに環境保護,運転性対応に対する客先ニーズに応えるため,さまざまな改良を行った.

1. Introduction

With Jaguar's use of the FPD 5-speed AT, the JF506E series has now been adopted by four automakers. The FPD unit was developed in a short span of about two years and was fitted to the Jaguar X-Type (Fig. 1) that went on sale in Europe, North America, Japan and other markets in 2001. The X-Type is Jaguar's first compact premium car and is equipped with the Traction 4 all-wheel-drive system to continue the Jaguar tradition of driving performance.

This was the first time for a JF506E unit to be mated with a 3.0-liter gasoline engine. Different parts of the transmission were strengthened to ensure durability under high-torque, high-speed operation. Various new control features were also incorporated into the FPD to obtain shifting performance befitting a luxury car. Moreover, a variety of improvements were made to meet customer needs with respect to environmental protection and driveability.



Fig. 1 JAGUAR X-TYPE

^{*}第二商品開発グル - プ Product Development Group No.2

2. 適用車両及びA Tの主要仕様

JF506E-Lの断面図をFig. 2に,適用した車両とAT の仕様をTable 1に示す.両機種ともフロント40%:リア60%にトルクを配分するフルタイム全輪駆動用のトランスファとの組み合せとなっている.

2. Major Specifications of Vehicle and AT

A cross-sectional view of the JF506-L is shown in Fig. 2. The major specifications of the Jaguar Type-X and the AT are listed in Table 1. On both vehicle models, the transmission is combined with the transfer case of a full-time 4WD system that splits the drive torque 40:60 to the front and rear wheels.

าร

	Model		X-TYPE 2.5L	X-TYPE 3.0L
	Drive type		All-wheel-drive	←
Vehicle	Weight (kg)		1,620	←
	Engine type		V6 DOHC	←
	Max. power	(DIN)	145 kw (198 ps)/6,800 rpm	172 kw (234 ps)/6,800 rpm
	Max. torque (DIN)		244 Nm/3,000 rpm	284 Nm/3,000 rpm
	Torque coverter		250 mm dia. with lock-up	←
	1st	1st	3.802	←
		2nd	2.132	←
	Gear ratio	3rd	1.365	←
A/T		4th	0.935	←
		5th	0.685	←
		Rev	2.970	←
	FDR		3.898	←
	Center distance (mm)		205.9	←
	Weight dry (kg)		95	←

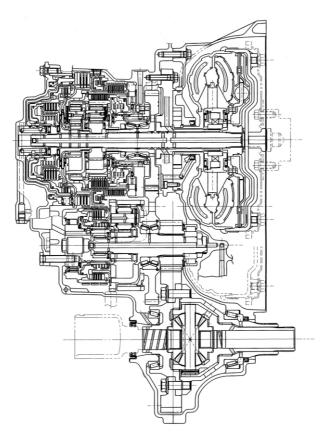


Fig. 2 Cross-sectional view of JF506E-L

3. 強度・耐久性の向上

JF506E-R(FPO)をベースに以下の強化を実施した.

- (1)フロント遊星ギアのピニオンギアを3個から4個 に増やした.
- (2)リア遊星ギアのピニオンギアを4個から5個に増 やした。
- (3)潤滑量を増加するため、ノッチ形状を改良してオイルポンプ吐出量を増加させた.
- (4)第2軸のスラストベアリングをサイズアップした.

4. 変速性能向上

FPDの開発に当たってのJAGUARからの要求は,X-TYPEより上級車種であるJAGUR XJ Seriesと同等の変速性能であった.さらに経時,個体バラツキ,環境変化に対する変速性能のロバスト性も要求された.

これら要求に応えることを主眼に以下の開発を 行った.

(1)フラットなアップシフト

提示された具体的な変速時の出力トルク波形 を目標に開発を行った.

エンジントルクダウンの量とタイミングの高精度制御,及び変速時クラッチ油圧の推定制御により目標の「突き上げ」や「引き」の無いフラットな変速を達成した.Fig.3参照

(2)新ATFの採用

クラッチの締結終了時に発生する突き上げショック(end bump)を改善するため新ATFを採用した.

3. Improvements in Strength and Durability

The strength of the transmission was improved as noted below, based on the JF506E-R(FPO) unit.

- (1) The number of pinion gears in the front planetary gearset was increased from three to four.
- (2) The number of pinion gears in the rear planetary gearset was increased from four to five.
- (3) The notch geometry was improved to increase the discharge volume of the oil pump in order to supply more lubricating oil.
- (4) The thrust bearing of the second shaft was increased in size.

4. Improvement of Shifting Performance

One request made by Jaguar for the development of the FPD was to achieve the same level of shifting performance as that of the Jaguar XJ Series, a more luxurious model than the X-Type. Another request was that shifting performance should be robust against the passage of time, variability among transmission units and environmental changes.

The following development work was undertaken with the principal aim of meeting those requests.

(1) Flat upshift waveform

The specific output torque waveform specified for shifting by Jaguar was set as the development target. The targeted flat upshift waveform without any abrupt upward or downward discontinuities (Fig. 3) was achieved through highly accurate control of the amount and timing of engine torque reduction and a control procedure that estimates the clutch pressure when the transmission shifts.

(2) Adoption of new ATF

A new automatic transmission fluid (ATF) was adopted to improve the end bump that occurs at conclusion of clutch engagement.

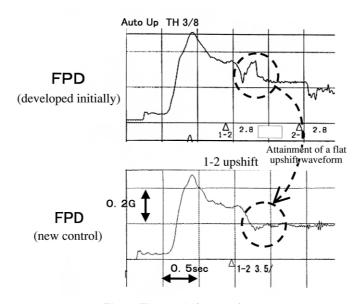


Fig. 3 Flat upshift waveform

(3)ダウンシフトリアルタイムフィードバック(RTFB) 油圧を瞬時に補正して変速を狙い通り行わせるRTFB制御を初めてダウンシフトにも採用した.またギア比の変化を直線的にするため,フィードバックの目標ギア比波形を従来式から改良を加えた.

(4)変速時間学習幅の拡大

学習結果で油圧を補正する値の幅(学習幅) を従来実績より拡大してロバスト性を向上した.

(5)ロックアップ(LU)ショック改善

スムーズLU中に踏み込みがあっても、この影響を受けずに本来のスムーズLUを継続する制御を採用した、LUのフィードバック制御関数にエンジンの状況に応じた成分を加味した。

(6)高地での変速性能の改善

高精度エンジントルク信号による変速油圧制御とRTFBの活用により平地と変わらない変速性能を実現した.

5. 環境保護対応

欧州の排ガス規制EURO4,及びカリフォルニアの排ガス規制LEVIIをクリアするため以下の改善を実施した.

- (1)ロックアップ車速の低速化
- (2)コーストロックアップ領域の拡大
- (3)高精度エンジントルク信号を使用することによるライン圧の最適化

6. 運転性能向上

JAGUARの望むしなやかな走りをを現するため以下の項目を開発した.

(1)シーケンシャルアップシフト

足離し状態を検知した時,再踏込み時のダウンシフト性能を確保する目的で,エンブレの無いギア段を順次アップシフトする,シーケンシャルアップシフト制御を開発した.

(2)3マップ アップヒルモード

登坂路での頻繁な変速を抑えるアップヒルモードの変速マップを,登坂角の検知精度向上と合わせて,従来の1マップから3マップに増やしてより適切なギアを選べるようにした.

(3) Downshift real-time feedback (RTFB) control

In order to compensate the hydraulic pressure instantaneously and execute shifts as desired, RTFB control was also applied for the first time to downshifts. In addition, the target gear ratio waveform for feedback was improved over the previous one to achieve a linear change in gear ratios.

(4) Expansion of adaptive learning range for shift time

The range of values for compensating the hydraulic pressure based on the results of adaptive learning (i.e., adaptive learning range) was expanded over that of previous transmission models to improve robustness.

(5) Improvement of lockup shock

A control procedure was adopted to continue the previous smooth lockup performance without it being affected even if the driver presses the accelerator pedal while lockup is proceeding smoothly. A component corresponding to the engine operating condition was added to the feedback control function for lockup operation.

(6) Improvement of high-altitude shifting performance

The use of a highly accurate engine torque signal for hydraulic pressure control during shifting and the application of RTFB control have made it possible to achieve high-altitude shifting performance equal to that obtained at low altitudes.

5. Environmental Protection Measures

The following improvements were made to comply with the EURO4 exhaust emission standards in Europe and California's LEV-II exhaust emission standards.

- (1) The vehicle speed for the onset of lockup was reduced
- (2) The coasting lockup range was expanded.
- (3) Line pressure is optimized on the basis of a highly accurate engine torque signal.

6. Improvement of Driveability

The following items were developed to achieve the supple driving performance desired by Jaguar.

(1) Sequential upshift control

A sequential upshift control procedure was developed that successively upshifts the transmission to a gear range without any engine faltering, when the system detects that the driver has lifted his or her foot off the accelerator pedal. This is done to secure the desired downshift performance when the driver accelerates again.

(2) 3-map uphill mode

The previous single shift map used for the uphill mode was increased to three maps along with improving the accuracy of detecting the uphill angle. This enables the transmission to select the right gear range so as to avoid frequent shifting when climbing hills.

(3)シフトマップ最適化

上記(2)以外でも,様々な状況下で運転性能を最適化するため多種のシフトマップを備えた.

- ・エンジン水温,エンジン油温,及びATF温度 で選択されるクーリングモードマップ.
- トラクションコントロール作動時のトラクションモードマップ
- ・クルーズコントロールがON時のクルーズモー ドマップ

7.その他の改善項目

JAGUARの製造,診断システムに対応するため以下の項目を採用した.

(1) チューンセレクト

ATCUの中に複数の仕向地用データを記憶させておき,車両の製造ラインでこの仕向地デーダを選択する方式を採用した.

(2) JDS(Jaguar Diagnosis System)テスタ対応 CAN(Controller Area Network)を通してAT の診断,データの書換え,及びチューンセレ クトの機能を持つJDSテスタとの通信を可能と した。

8.あとがき

カナダの凍結した湖からアリゾナの灼熱の砂漠に至るまで広範囲で厳格な車両テストに参加し, JAGUARが求めるトップレベルの品質,耐久信頼性に応える開発を行った.

JF506Eのポテンシャルを拡大したことで,世界の人々に満足していただける変速性能と運転性能を達成でき,「お客様に喜ばれる世界一の商品作り」という当社の企業方針に貢献できたと思う.

最後にFPDの開発に多大な協力を頂いた, Jaguar Cars Limited様, 並びにJEGUKをはじめとする社内関係部署の方々に厚くお礼申し上げます.

(3) Shift map optimization

Apart from increasing the number of shift maps for the uphill mode, the transmission also incorporates a variety of shift maps to provide optimum driveability under all sorts of driving conditions.

- A cooling mode map selected on the basis of the engine coolant temperature, engine oil temperature and ATF temperature.
- · A traction mode map for use during traction control.
- · A cruise mode map for use when cruise control is on.

7. Other Improvements

The following items were adopted to accommodate Jaguar's manufacturing and diagnosis systems.

(1) Selectable tuning

The AT control unit (ATCU) stores data on multiple markets where the car is used. A system has been adopted so that data matching the market where a car will be used can be selected on the assembly line at the time of production.

(2) Compatibility with Jaguar Diagnosis System (JDS) tester Operations such as AT diagnosis, rewriting of data and communication with a JDS tester incorporating a selectable tuning function are all possible via the Controller Area Network (CAN).

8. Concluding Remarks

We participated in the rigorous vehicle tests Jaguar conducted under a wide range of environments, extending from Canada's frozen lakes to the scorching heat of the Arizona desert. As a result, the transmission was developed with the highest levels of quality, durability and reliability as demanded by Jaguar.

This extension of the potential of the JF506E has achieved shifting performance and driveability that will satisfy drivers throughout the world. It has thus contributed to our corporate philosophy of "building the world's best products that give customers enjoyment."

Finally, the authors would like to thank Jaguar Cars Ltd. and various in-house departments concerned, especially JEGUK, for their tremendous cooperation in connection with the development of the FPD.

Author



Tomohisa YOSHIDA

FF車用5速AT JF506E-M(FPF)の紹介

Introducing the JF506E-M (FPF) 5-speed AT for Front-drive Cars

西村 勲
Isao NISHIMURA

原田 隆行

Takayuki HARADA

抄 録 JF506E-M型自動変速機は本年発売されたマツダ様の車両に搭載するべく,適用変更を加えたFF5速ATである.本報ではこの変更内容について紹介する.

Summary The JF506E-M is a 5-speed AT for front-wheel-drive cars that was modified for use on a model launched by Mazda Motor Corp. in 2002. This paper describes the details of the changes made to this transmission.

1.はじめに

JF506E-M型5速自動変速機(FPF)は,JF506Eシリーズとして5社目のカーメーカへの適用機種である.約2年間で開発し;02年2月に北米;02年4月に日本で発売されたマツダ(株)様のMPV(Fig. 1)に搭載された.適用エンジンはV6型3Lガソリンエンジンとなる.また,車格にふさわしい変速性能を得るため各種の新制御を導入した.さらに環境保護,運転性対応に対する客先ニーズに応えるため様々な改良を行った.

2.ATの仕様

JF506E-Mの断面図をFig. 2に示す.また,適用車両とATの仕様をTable 1に示す.

1. Introduction

With the introduction of the JF506E-M (FPF) 5-speed AT, the JF506E series has now been adopted by five automakers. Developed in approximately two years, the JF506E-M was fitted on Mazda Motor Corp.'s MPV minivan that was launched in North America in February 2002 and in Japan in April 2002 (Fig. 1). The MPV is powered by a 3.0-L V6 gasoline engine. Various new controls were incorporated in the transmission to achieve shifting performance befitting this class of vehicle. Moreover, various improvements were also made to meet the customer's needs with regard to environmental protection and driveability.

2. AT Specifications

A cross-sectional view of the JF506E-M is shown in Fig. 2, and its specifications and those of the MPV are listed in Table 1.



Fig. 1 MPV

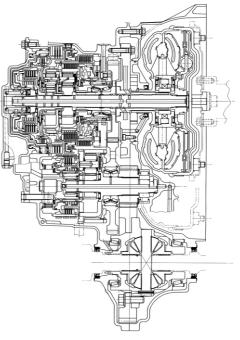


Fig. 2 Cross-sectional view of JF506E-M

Table 1 Specifications

	Model		MPV	
	Drive type		2 wheel drive	
Vehicle	Weight		2,195 kg	
venicie	Engine type		V6 DOHC	
	Max.power		180 ps/6,000 rpm	
	Max.torque	(DIN)	248 Nm/4,500 rpm	
	Torque coverter		250 mm dia. with lock-up	
	Gear ratio	1st	3.802	
		2nd	2.132	
		3rd	1.365	
AT		4th	0.935	
AI		5th	0.685	
		Rev	2.970	
	Final gear ra	atio	3.491	
	Center dista	nce	205.9 mm	
	Weight dry		94 kg	

3. 変速性能向上

本ATの開発にあたってのマツダ様からの要求は, 競合他車に対してアマングリーダ(競合トップ集団 レベルと同等の性能を有する)の変速性能を狙うこ とであった.この要求に応えることを主眼に以下 の開発を行った.

- (1)トータル変速性能向上のため,他のJF506E系に対して以下の変更を行った.
 - ・きめ細かな設定ができるように制御ロジック を一新した.
 - ・ATCUを16bitから32bitに変更した.

(2)アップシフト

提示された目標評点及び競合他車とのベンチマー キングを基に,目標値を設定して,下記の適合 を行った.

エンジントルクダウン制御及び変速時クラッチ油圧の学習制御やリアルタイムフィードバック制御により常時最適な変速性能を達成した. (Fig. 3参照)

(3)ダウンシフト

ハイクラッチ油圧を制御するソレノイドを設定 してダウンシフト時のラグを改善した.

(4)高地での変速性能

エンジントルク信号による変速油圧制御とリアルタイムフィードバック制御の活用により平地と変わらない変速性能を実現した.

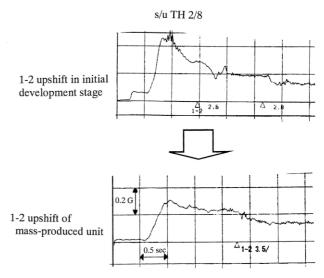


Fig. 3 Upshift waveforms

3. Improvement of Shifting Performance

One request made by Mazda regarding the development of this AT was to achieve shifting performance that would rank with the best of the MPV's leading rivals. The following development work was carried out with the primary aim of meeting that request.

- (1) To enhance all-around shifting performance, the following modifications were made in relation to other units in the JF506E series.
 - The control logic was completely renewed to facilitate finer settings.
 - The AT control unit (ATCU) was upgraded from a 16-bit to a 32-bit controller.

(2) Upshifts

Target values were set on the basis of specified evaluation criteria and the benchmarking of rival models, and adaptations were made to attain those targets. Specifically, a control for reducing engine torque when shifting, adaptive learning control for the hydraulic pressure during shifting and real-time feedback control make it possible to attain the optimum shifting performance at all times (Fig. 3).

(3) Downshifts

A solenoid for controlling the high-clutch hydraulic pressure was adopted to reduce the lag when downshifting.

(4) High-altitude shifting performance

The use of an engine torque signal for hydraulic pressure control during shifting and the application of real-time feedback control achieve high-altitude shifting performance equal to that at low altitudes.

4. 環境保護対応

北米の排気ガス規制をクリアするため以下の適合を実施した.

- (1)ロックアップ車速の低速化
- (2)コーストロックアップ領域の拡大
- (3)エンジントルク信号を使用することによるライン圧の最適化

5. 音振性能最適化

車両での音振性能を確保するためにAT側として 下記仕様を織り込んでいる.

- (1)アウトプットギアノイズ最適化のため、ギアモ ジュールを変更
- (2)歯車精度の最適化
- (3)箱物の剛性アップ

6. 診断システム

CAN(Controller Area Network) を通してATの診断機能をもつ, WDS(World Wide Diagnostic System) テスタとの通信を可能とした.

7. あとがき

JF506E-Mは、マツダ様として初の5速ATとして納めさせていただくことができた。さまざまな高い要求仕様に応えるべく関係部署一丸となって開発を行い、トップレベルの各種性能を達成できたと自負する。

4. Environmental Protection Measures

The following measures were adopted to comply with exhaust emission standards in North America.

- (1) The vehicle speed for the onset of lockup was lowered.
- (2) The coasting lockup range was expanded.
- (3) Line pressure is optimally controlled by using an engine torque signal.

5. Optimization of NV Performance

The following specifications were incorporated in the AT to secure the noise and vibration performance desired for the vehicle.

- (1) The output gear module was changed to optimize its noise performance
- (2) Optimization of gear accuracy
- (3) Improvement of case rigidity

6. Diagnostic System

Communication with a Worldwide Diagnostic System (WDS) tester, which includes an AT diagnostic function, is now possible via the Controller Area Network (CAN).

7. Concluding Remarks

The JF506E-M is the first 5-speed transmission that we have delivered to Mazda Motor Corp. This transmission was developed in close cooperation with various related departments to meet the high specifications requested by Mazda, and we are confident that it provides top-level performance in every area.

Authors



Isao NISHIMURA



Takayuki HARADA

"JR006E"型 FR車用トロイダルCVTのスポーティ車への適用

Introduction of "JR006E" Toroidal CVT for Rear-wheel-drive Sporty Vehicles

河村 泰孝*

吉田 武雄*

竹内 徹*

Yasutaka KAWAMURA

Takeo YOSHIDA

Tohru TAKEUCHI

抄 録 1999年に世界で初めて車用に売り出したトロイダルCVTをスポーティ車に適用した.運転を楽しんでいただくために,8速のマニュアルモードの変速パターンを用意し,さらに変速速度を向上させて「タイヤの駆動力をドライバが決定する」と言う,スポーティ車にとっての魅力的な性格を与えることができた.

Summary We implemented the world's first toroidal CVT on a passenger car in 1999. To adapt this unit for sporty vehicles, we introduced an 8-speed manual mode shift pattern and also increased the ratio changing speed. With this CVT, the driver can control the driving force at the tires at all times, which is an attractive feature for sporty vehicles.

1.はじめに

トロイダルCVTは1999年に世界で初めてセドリック・グロリアに搭載されて発売され、その滑らかな運転性、特にアクセルを踏み込んだときの滑らかで且つ急速な駆動力アップの感覚が好評であり、高級乗用車にトロイダルCVTを適用した際の魅力を十分に引き出した。

2. 開発の狙い

一方,スポーティ車に適用した時には,別の魅力が引き出される.

トロイダルCVTの特徴である変速が早いことを生かして、アクセルでエンジンの出力をコントロールすると同時に、変速比を操ることによって、駆動力そのものをドライバが制御できるようになるはずである。

ドライバ意志の車への伝達をFig. 2に示すパドルスイッチで行い,運転者への負担が少ないシステムを狙った.

(パドルスイッチの開発は日産自動車(株)様)



Fig. 1 Nissan Skyline fitted with toroidal CVT

*第四商品開発グループ Product Development Group No.4

1. Introduction

The world's first toroidal CVT was fitted on the Cedric/Gloria models put on the Japanese market in 1999. This unit has been highly acclaimed for its smooth driveability and especially for the feeling of a smooth and quick increase in driving force when the driver presses on the accelerator pedal. This performance brings out the full attraction of using a toroidal CVT on luxury passenger cars.

2. Development Objectives

On a sporty vehicle, on the other hand, a different type of attractive performance can also be elicited. One of the features of a toroidal CVT is fast ratio changes. By taking advantage of this feature, it is possible to enable the driver to control the driving force itself. That can be accomplished by manipulating the CVT speed ratio while simultaneously controlling the engine output with the accelerator pedal.

As shown in Fig. 2, drivers convey their wishes to the vehicle by means of a paddle shifter, which is intended to reduce their driving workload. (The paddle shifter was developed by Nissan Motor Co., Ltd.)



Fig. 2 Paddle shifter mounted behind the steering wheel (The photo was processed by computer to show a see-through view of the paddles.)

3.主要諸元

3. Major Specifications

主要諸元をTable 1に , ユニット断面図をFig. 3に 示す . The major specifications of the JR006E toroidal CVT are listed in Table 1. A cross-sectional view of the unit is presented in Fig. 3.

Table 1 Specifications

Unit weight (Dry)		kg	104
Max. input speed		rpm	6600
Ratios	D Range		2.857~0.660
	Manual mode	1st	2.857~2.073
		2nd	2.178~1.497
		3rd	1.709~1.232
		4th	1.411~1.059
		5th	1.192~0.816
		6th	1.003~0.664
			0.831~0.660
		8th	0.686~0.660
	Reverse ratio	Rev.	1.957
Torque conv	erter size		250 mm dia.
Lock-up clu	tch		Twin faces
Communication with vehicle			CAN
Shift positions			P-R-N-D
Additional		Manual 8 speed	
	Interface		Paddle shifter

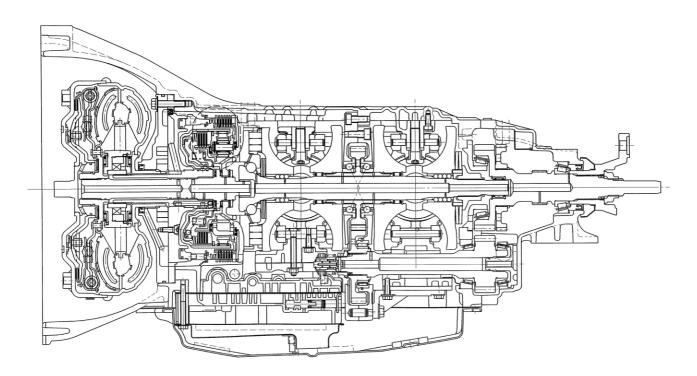


Fig. 3 Cross-sectional view of the toroidal CVT

4. マニュアルモードの変速性能

スポーティ車へ適用したときの車の魅力を引き 出すため,以下に述べる変速線とし,制御方法を 改良した.

4.1. マニュアルモード変速線

Fig. 4にJR006Eのマニュアルモードの変速線を示す.

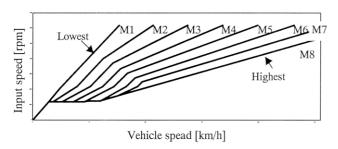


Fig. 4 Manual Mode Shift Schedule

8速化と変速線の最適化を行った.

固定ギヤ比としないこと、パドルスイッチ化により早いUP/DOWN変速スイッチ操作が可能、変速回数が多くても気にならなくなることから、全域で小気味良く且つ早く変速できるように改良した。

低回転域は,UP/DOWN変速時の回転差を適度に 広げて変速した時に回転段差が得られるようにした. 低~中回転域は,変速線を立てることで早くトルク を上昇させると共に,UP/DOWN変速時の回転差が いつも一定に近くなるようにしてフィーリングを向 上させた.

高回転域は,等時間変速に近づけることでフィーリングを向上させた.

4.2. Dレンジ→マニュアルモード時エンブレ制御

Dレンジからエンジンブレーキをかけるためにマニュアルモードに入れる場合,8速もあるのですぐには 最適なエンブレ力が得られない.

このため、アクセルオフ時にDレンジ マニュアル モードとした場合、最適なエンブレ力が得られる制 御を追加した.

4. Manual Mode Shift Performance

This section describes the improvements made to the shift schedule and control method in order to elicit the attractive performance of a sporty vehicle fitted with this toroidal CVT.

4.1 Manual mode shift schedule

The manual mode shift schedule of the improved JR006E unit is shown in Fig. 4. Eight speeds were adopted and the shift schedule was optimized.

The adoption of the paddle shifter, along with not using fixed gear ratios, facilitates easy operation for fast upshifts and downshifts. The unit was improved so that quick, pleasing shifts can be executed in all speed ranges. Consequently, drivers will not mind shifting even if they do so frequently.

In the low-speed range, the rpm difference when executing upshifts and downshifts was suitably widened so as to obtain a difference in rpm levels at the time a shift is made. In the low to intermediate speed range, the shift schedule was designed with a steeper slope relative to the vehicle speed, thereby increasing torque more quickly. In addition, the shift feel was improved by making the rpm difference nearly constant whenever upshifts and downshifts are executed. In the high speed range, the shift feel was improved by making the shift time approximately equal in duration.

4.2 Engine braking control for manual mode selection from D range

Suppose the driver selects the manual mode from the D range in order to apply engine braking. Since this unit has eight speed ranges, the optimum engine braking effect would not be obtained immediately.

Therefore, a control feature was added to achieve the optimum engine braking effect when the driver selects the manual mode from the D range while letting up on the accelerator pedal.

4.3. 変速速度向上

スポーツトランスミッションをアピールするために,全域においてUP/DOWN変速時の変速時間はトップレーシングドライバー並の0.3秒以内(平均的には0.2秒)を達成させると共に,変速ショックを両立させた.

ベルトCVTはステッピングモ - タが油圧を介して可動プーリを軸方向に直接移動させることで変速比を変化させるが,トロイダルCVTはステッピングモ - タが油圧を介してパワ - ロ - ラの傾転力を制御している為,非常に早い変速が可能である. Fig. 5に変速機構を示す.

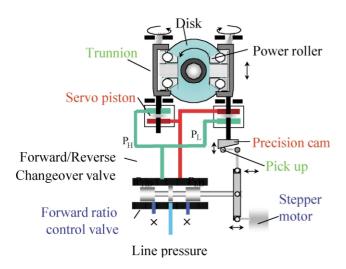


Fig. 5 Forward ratio control system

変速はステッピングモ-タを動かすと前進用変速弁が動き、サ・ボピストンの差圧が変化し、トラニオンが上下方向に変位する.発生した傾転力によりパワ・ロ・ラは傾転して変速が始まる.プリセスカムが回転し、ピックアップが上下方向に変位するとリンクが動いて前進用変速弁は元の方向に動き、トラニオンの上下方向変位がゼロなった所で変速が終了する.

Fig. 6に ステッピングモ - 夕の動きと変速比の変化を示す.トラニオンの上下方向変位が0.4mm位でも傾転速度はかなり早く,変速速度も早い.ステッピングモ - 夕が動き始めて0.2秒後にはM2からM3への変速がほぼ終了しているのが分かる.

4.3 Improvement of shift speed

In order to emphasize the transmission's sporty performance, a shift time within 0.3 sec. (average time of 0.2 sec.) has been achieved for the completion of upshifts and downshifts in all speed ranges. That is on a par with the shifting speed of top racing drivers, yet shift shock has been reduced at the same time.

In a belt-drive CVT, a stepper motor directly moves the movable pulleys in the axial direction via hydraulic pressure to accomplish ratio changes. In a toroidal CVT, a stepper motor controls the tilting force of the power rollers via hydraulic pressure, thereby enabling the unit to shift extremely quickly. The ratio change mechanism is shown schematically in Fig. 5.

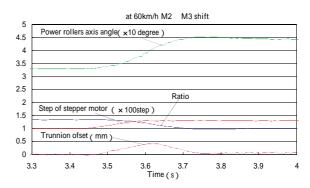


Fig. 6 Step movement of stepper motor and ratio change

In executing a ratio change, the movement of the stepper motor actuates the forward ratio control valve, thereby changing the differential pressure of the servo piston to displace the trunnions vertically. The tilting force thus generated tilts the power rollers to initiate the ratio change. Rotation of the precision cam displaces the pick-up vertically, causing the linkage to move, which moves the forward ratio control valve in the direction of its original position. When the vertical displacement of the trunnions becomes zero, the ratio change is completed.

The waveforms in Fig. 6 illustrate the step movement of the stepper motor and the ratio change. Even with trunnion vertical displacement of about 0.4 mm, the power rollers tilt rather quickly and the shift speed is also fast. The figure indicates that a manual 2-3 shift is nearly completed within 0.2 sec after the stepper motor begins to move.

5. まとめ

以上述べてきたように変速線の引き方,変速早さを工夫することによりトロイダルCVTをスポーティ車に適用した時の魅力を十分引き出すことに成功した.「思いのままの変速比に素早く変速できる」というトロイダルCVTの特徴により,車種によってその性格に合致した車の性能を出すことができることが分かった.なおトロイダルCVT付き日産スカイラインは2002年2月19日より発売された.

5. Summary

As described here, by improving the shift schedule and shift speed, we successfully adapted the JR006E toroidal CVT so that it can bring out the full attraction of a sporty vehicle. This toroidal CVT is characterized by its execution of quick ratio changes in response to the driver's wishes. This work has shown that it is possible to achieve vehicle performance that accurately matches the character of different car models. A Nissan Skyline model fitted with this toroidal CVT was put on the Japanese market on February 19, 2002.

Authors



Yasutaka KAWAMURA



Takeo YOSHIDA



Tohru TAKEUCHI

RR車用3速AT JF302E-F (FBF) の紹介

Introducing the JF302E-F(FBF) 3-speed AT for Rear-drive Cars

JF302E-F(FBF)型自動変速機は,軽自動車用としては国内唯一のRR車専用に開発した電子制御式3速ATです.4WD車への適用も可能であり,富士重工業株式会社様のサンバーに搭載されています.

The JF302E-F(FBF) electronically controlled 3-speed AT is the only minicar gearbox in the domestic market that has been developed specifically for use on rearwheel-drive cars. It is also applicable to 4WD vehicles and is used on Fuji Heavy Industry's Sambar model.

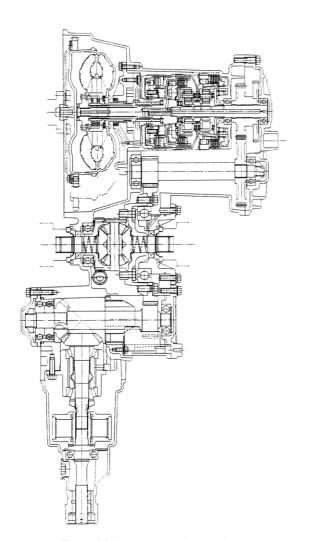


Fig. 1 Main cross-sectional view

Table 1 Specifications

Max. input torque		71 Nm		
Max. input speed		8,000 rpm		
Max. vehicle weigh	ht (GVW)	1,350 kg		
Control system		Electroni	С	
Torque converter		186 mm d	ia.	
	1st	2.659		
0	2nd	1.530		
Gear ratio	3rd	1.000		
	Rev.	2.129		
Final drive gear rat	io	5.711 ~ 6.282		
No. of selector pos	itions	6 (P, R, N, D, 2, 1)		
Overall length		338 mm		
Center distance between engine and differential		178.7 mr	n	
Dry weight		For 2WD use For 4WD use	47 kg 56 kg	

特 徴

- (1)軽自動車向けとしては国内唯一のRR車専用の電子制御式ATとして開発し、コントロールバルブを上側に配置することで最低地上高を確保、また2WD、4WDの両方に対応できるようにしました。
- (2)小型トルクコンバータ,パラコイドタイプのオイルポンプ等の採用により,コンパクトにまとめるとともに耐久信頼性の確保にも配慮しました.
- (3)性能的には変速の切換えを電子制御としたことで自由度が増し、複数の変速モードをもつことができ、運転性の向上に寄与しました。

Major Features

- (1) Intended for minicar application, the JF302E-F(FBF) electronically controlled AT is the only product of its kind in the domestic market that has been developed specifically for rear-wheel-drive vehicles. Sufficient minimum ground clearance was secured by positioning the control values at the top of the unit. The transmission can be adapted to both 2WD and 4WD vehicles.
- (2) By adopting a small torque converter and a paracoid oil pump, among other measures, a compact design has been achieved along with giving thorough consideration to the assurance of durability and reliability.
- (3) In terms of performance, the switching of speed ranges is now controlled electronically to provide greater control freedom and also give the transmission multiple shift modes, thereby contributing to improved driveability.

お使いいただいている代表車種

Typical model fitted with the JF302E-F(FBF) AT



サンバーディアス Sambar Dias

FF車用4速AT F04B(ZY)の紹介

Introducing the FO4B(ZY) 4-Speed AT for Front-drive Cars

'2001年2月 日産自動車(株)様のX-トレイルの高出力エンジン用に強化したF04B(ZY)型自動変速機は,更に電子制御の改良を行い,変速性能の向上を実現しました.日産自動車(株)様の北米主力車種であるマキシマに2001年8月から拡大採用されています.

The F04B (ZY) AT was reinforced for application to Nissan Motor Co.'s X-TRAIL fitted with a high-power engine in February 2001, and its shifting performance was also subsequently enhanced by improving the electronic control system. In August 2001, application of this unit was expanded to Nissan Motor Co.'s Maxima, a mainstay model of Nissan's lineup in North America.

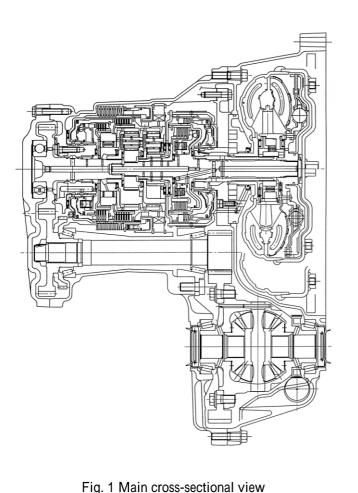


Table 1 Specifications

Max. input torque		350 Nm		
Max. input s	speed	7,000 rpm		
Max. vehicle	e weight (GVW)	1,996 kg		
Control syst	em	Electronic		
Torque conv	/erter	250 mm dia.		
	1st	2.785		
	2nd	1.545		
Gear ratio	3rd	1.000		
	4th	0.694		
	Rev.	2.272		
Final drive g	gear ratio	3.525 ~ 4.425		
No. of select	tor positions	7 (P, R, N, D, 3, 2, 1)		
Overall length		415.5 mm		
Center distance between engine and differential		205 mm		
Dry weight		85 kg		

特 徴

マキシマへの適用にあたっては,3.5Lエンジンの 高出力を伝達すると共に,変速性能向上・信頼性 向上とコスト低減を両立するため,電子制御の改 良とデバイスの最適化を行っています.

- (1)シフト時のトルクダウンタイミングを最適化することにより変速性能を向上しています.
- (2)アクセルの踏込み方に応じ,トルクダウンタイミング,変速時油圧を切り替えることにより, 変速性能を向上しています.
- (2)変速時の車速に応じ,変速時の油圧をきめ細やかに補正することにより,変速性能を向上しています.
- (4)高地走行時の気圧低下に伴うエンジントルク減 少に応じた変速時油圧へ切り替えることで,変 速性能を向上しています.
- (5)N Dアキュ ムスプリングにプリロ ドを持たせる事により,セレクト時油圧の最適化を図りセレクトラグとショックの両立を可能としています.

Major Features

In applying the F04B(ZY) AT to the Maxima, the electronic control system was improved and device performance was optimized. That was done in order to transmit the high output of the car's 3.5-liter engine as well as to combine improvements in shifting performance and reliability with cost reductions.

- (1) Shifting performance has been improved by optimizing the timing for reducing engine torque when a shift is executed.
- (2) The torque reduction timing and hydraulic pressure during a shift are controlled to match the driver's operation of the accelerator pedal, thereby enhancing shifting performance.
- (3) The hydraulic pressure is precisely compensated during a shift according to the vehicle speed at that moment so as to improve shifting performance.
- (4) Shifting performance is also improved by controlling the hydraulic pressure at the time a shift is executed to match the engine torque reduction that occurs accompanying a decline in atmospheric pressure when driving at high altitudes.
- (5) The N-D accumulator spring is pre-loaded for the purpose of optimizing the hydraulic pressure at the time a driver selects a gear range, thereby achieving a suitable balance between selector lever drag and shift shock.

お使いいただいている代表車種

Typical model fitted with the FO4B(ZY) AT



Nissan Maxima SE Shown in Sterling Mist

FF車用4速AT JF404E-W (FDO) の紹介

Introducing the JF404E-W (FDO) 4-speed AT for Front-drive Cars

JF404E-W(FDO)型自動変速機は、従来2個使っていたシンプソンタイプのプラネタリギアをラビニョウタイプにすることで1個とし、ワンウェイクラッチも2個から1個にすることで、軽量、コンパクトを実現した、小型の前輪駆動乗用車のための4速自動変速機です.95年にVolkswagen Poloに初めて採用され、2000年12月にはSKODA Fabiaにも拡大採用されています.

更に2002年1月にはフルモデルチェンジした Volkswagen Poloにも継続採用されました. The JF404E0W (FDO) AT features a lightweight, compact design as a result of adopting one Rabinow planetary gearset instead of the two Simpson planetary gearsets used previously and also reducing the number of one-way clutches from two to one. This 4-speed AT is designed for use on front-drive compact cars. It was first adopted on the Volkswagen Polo in 1995 and its application was expanded to the Skoda Fabia in December 2000. Moreover, it has continued to be used on the new generation of the Volkswagen Polo that was released in January 2002.

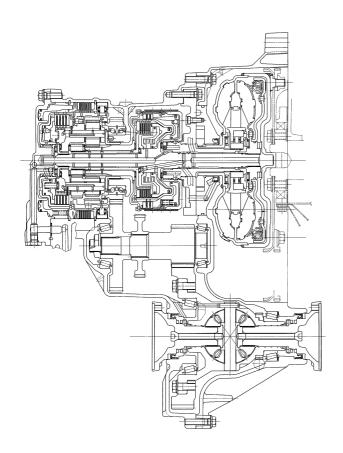


Table 1 Specifications

Max. input torque 150 Nm Max. input speed 7,000 rpm Max. vehicle weight (GVW) 1,550 kg Control system Electronic Torque converter 215 mm dia. 1st 2.875 1.512 2nd Gear ratio 3rd 1.000 4th 0.726 Rev. 2.656 Final drive gear ratio 3.47 ~ 4.38 No. of selector positions 7(P, R, N, D, 3, 2, 1) Overall length 360.8 mm Center distance between engine and 174 mm differential Dry weight 60 kg

Fig. 1 Main cross-sectional view

特 徴

SKODA Fabiaおよび新型Poloと現行Poloとの最大の違いがプラットホームでした.このプラットホームの違いに対応するため,ATとして次の変更を行いました.

(1)ATの搭載性の向上

ケースとコンバータハウジングの結合ボルト 用ボス位置変更,スイングサポート用ボスの面 取りを追加する等の変更を行い,車両搭載性向 トを図りました.

(2)ノイズの低減

車両暗騒音の低減に対応できるよう,オイルポンプ,アウトプットギアに工夫をし,ノイズ低減を図りました.

(3)セレクトショック向上

- ・Low/C ディッシュプレートの荷重を下げることにより,D-Rセレクト時にLow/C圧を解放する過程の油圧を高くしました.これによりLow/Cの完全解放タイミングが遅れて,D-Rセレクトショックが改善されました.
- ・R-Dセレクト時の油圧制御に改良を加えることで,R-Dショックを改善しました.

Major Features

The biggest differences between the Skoda Fabia and the previous and current generations of the Polo are in their platforms. The following changes were made to the AT to accommodate these platform differences.

(1) Improvement of AT mountability

The bosses of the bolts that couple the case and the torque converter housing were repositioned and chamfering was added to the swing support bosses, among other changes, to improve vehicle mountability.

(2) Noise reduction

Steps were taken to reduce the noise of the oil pump and output gear in line with the reduction of overall vehicle noise.

(3) Improvement of selection quality

The load of the low clutch dish plate was reduced so as to raise the pressure in the process of releasing the low clutch pressure when a D-R selection is made. This works to delay the timing for full release of the low clutch and thereby improves D-R selection quality.

Pressure control at the time of an R-D selection was further improved to enhance R-D selection quality.

お使いいただいている代表車種



Fabia

Typical models fitted with the JF404E-W (FDO) AT



New Polo

FF車用4速AT JF405E-H (FRO)の紹介

Introducing the JF405E-H (FRO) 4-speed AT for Front-drive Cars

'98年10月にスズキ(株)様のワゴンR RRに初めて搭載されたJF405E-H(FRO)型自動変速機は,世界トップレベルの小型・軽量で,小型乗用車にジャストフィットしたFF自動変速機です.'01年11月には,MRワゴンにも拡大採用されています.

The JF405E-H (FRO) AT is one of the world's most compact and lightest ATs, making it an ideal gearbox for small cars. Designed for application to front-wheel-drive cars, it was first fitted to Suzuki Motor Corporation's WagonR RR in October 1998. Application was further expanded to the MRwagon in November 2001.

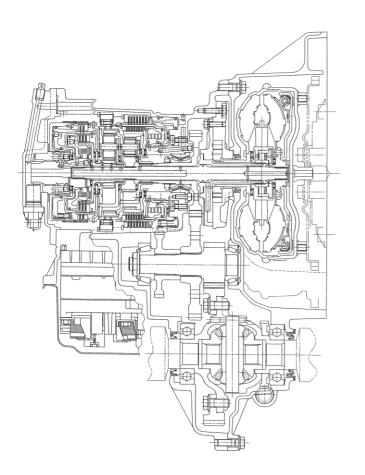


Fig. 1 Main cross-sectional view

Table 1 Specifications

Max. input torque		110 Nm
Max. input speed		7,800 rpm
Max. vehicle wei	ght (GVW)	1,235 kg
Control system		Electronic
Torque converter		186 mm dia.
	1st	2.914
	2nd	1.525
Gear ratio	3rd	1.000
	4th	0.725
	Rev.	2.642
Final drive gear r	atio	4.017 ~ 5.804
No. of selector po	ositions	6(P,R,N,D,2,L)
Overall length	359.9 mm	
Center distance b and differential	etween engine	172 mm
Dry weight		45.7 kg

特 徴

- (1)部品点数を削減して小型・軽量化を実現しています.
- (2)小型なトルクコンバータで高性能を達成しています.
- (3)簡素で小型な油圧制御装置を使って,最適な油 圧で変速機を制御しています.さらに,アイド ルニュ・トラル制御,スリップロックアップ制 御,登降坂制御が可能です.

Major Features

- (1) A compact, lightweight package has been achieved by reducing the part count.
- (2) High performance has been attained by adopting a compact torque converter.
- (3) A simple and compact hydraulic pressure control system is used to provide the optimum pressure for controlling the AT. Moreover, it also facilitates idle neutral control, slip lockup control and prevention of hunting when climbing hills.

お使いいただいている代表車種

Typical model fitted with the JF405E-H (FRO) AT



MRwagon

FF車用4速AT JF405E-Q(FRA)の紹介

Introducing the JF405E-Q (FRA) 4-speed AT for Front-drive Cars

'00年3月に,韓国の現代自動車様ATOZ/起亜自動車様VISTOの0.8L&1.0L NA車両に搭載されたJF405E-Q(FRA)型自動変速機は,韓国軽自動車初の4速自動変速機であり,韓国市場だけでなく欧州,中東の各地域にも輸出されています.

また,'00年11月には,0.8L TURBO車両にも拡大 採用されています. In March 2000, the JF405E-Q (FRA) AT was adopted on the Hyundai Atoz and the Kia Visto, both of which are available with a 0.8-liter or a 1.0-liter naturally aspirated engine. This unit is the first 4-speed AT to be used on Korean minicars. In addition to the South Korean market, it is also exported to Europe and the Middle East. Application was further expanded to include a 0.8-liter turbocharged model in November 2000.

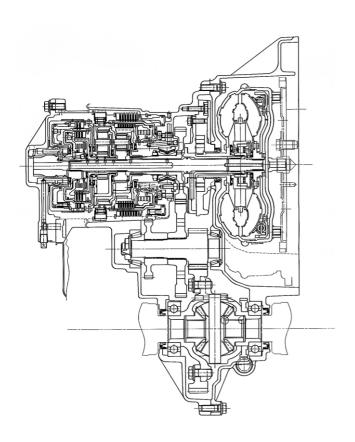


Table 1 Specifications

Fig. 1 Main cross-sectional view

Max. input torque	9	98 N m
Max. input speed		6,000 rpm
Max. vehicle wei	ght (GVW)	1,316 kg
Control system		Electronic
Torque converter		186 mm dia.
	1st	2.914
	2nd	1.525
Gear ratio	3rd	1.000
	4th	0.725
	Rev.	2.642
Final drive gear ra	atio	4.017 ~ 4.880
No. of selector positions		6 (P, R, N, D, 2, L)
Overall Length		359.9 mm (Excluding mounting bracket)
Center distance be and differential	etween engine	172 mm
Dry weight		45.7 kg

特 徴

- (1) 部品点数を削減して小型・軽量化を実現しています。
- (2) 小型なトルクコンバータで高性能を達成して います.
- (3) 簡素で小型な油圧制御装置を使って,最適な油圧で変速機を制御しています.さらに,最適燃費線を配慮したシフトスケジュールの採用,ロックアップ領域の拡大により,動力性能の最適化だけでなく燃費向上も図っています.

Major Features

- (1) A compact, lightweight AT was achieved by reducing the part count.
- (2) A compact torque converter was adopted to obtain high performance.
- (3) A small, simple hydraulic pressure control system is used to provide the optimum pressure for controlling the transmission. Moreover, a shift schedule designed for optimum fuel economy has been adopted along with expanding the range of lockup operation. As a result, not only does this AT provide optimum power performance, it also improves fuel economy as well.

お使いいただいている代表車種



Atoz

Typical models fitted with the JF405E-Q (FRA) AT



Visto

FF車用5速AT JF506 E-R (FPO)の紹介

Introducing the JF506E-R (FPO) 5-speed AT for Front-drive Cars

JF506E-R型自動変速機は,'99年7月にRover MG GroupのRover75とLand Rover GroupのFreelanderに初めて搭載されました.'01年7月にはRover MG GroupのRover75 Tourerに拡大採用されました.

The JF506E-R 5-speed AT was first adopted on Rover MG Group's Rover 75 in July 1999 and on Land Rover Group's Freelander in August 2000. Its application was further expanded to Rover MG Group's Rover 75 Tourer in July 2001.

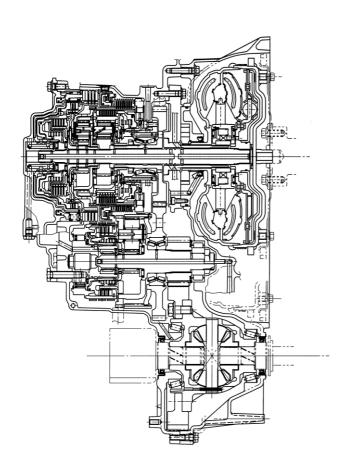


Fig.1 Main cross section

Table 1 Specifications

Max. input t	orque	310 Ni	m		
Max. input s	speed	7,000	rpm		
Max. vehicle w	eight (GVW)	1,900	kg		
Control syst	em	Electro	onic		
Torque conv	erter/	250 m	m dia		
	1st	3.474	3.801		
	2nd	1.948	2.131		
Gear ratio	3rd	1.247	1.364		
Geal Tallo	4th	0.854	0.935		
	5th	0.685	0.685		
	Rev.	2.714	2.970		
Final drive gear ratio		2.9 ^	- 4.1		
No. of select positions		7 (P, R, N,	D, 4, 3, 2)		
Dry weight		95	kg		

特 徴

- (1)1個のワンウェイクラッチ,超扁平トルクコン バータの採用により,車両への搭載性を良くし ています。
- (2)ワイドな5速ギアの採用により,高い燃費性能とパワフルな加速性能を両立しています.
- (3)4WD用のトランスファと結合され,本格的なオフロード走行に耐えるよう,高剛性な箱物構造を採用しています.
- (4)ATFを精度良く注入でき,レベルゲージが不要な,フローチュープ方式を採用しています.
- (5)マニュアルシフト" Command Shift "を採用して, スポーティなドライブやオフロードでの確実な コントロールを実現しています.
- (6)登坂道での頻繁な変速を抑えたり,降坂路で最 適なエンジンブレーキを与えるAdaptive shift制 御を採用しています.
- (7)その他にも次の制御を採用しています.
 - ・Normal, Sport, Snowの3種類の走行モードが選択できるモードスイッチ
 - ・変速ショックの経時変化を抑える変速時間学 習制御
 - ・変速ショックのばらつきを抑える変速時油圧 のリアルタイムフィードバック制御

Major Features

- (1) Vehicle mountability was improved by adopting a single one-way clutch and an ultra-flat torque converter.
- (2) The adoption of five speeds with a wider ratio range achieves both excellent fuel economy and powerful acceleration performance.
- (3) A high-rigidity case construction has been adopted to withstand true off-road driving conditions when coupled with the 4WD transfer case.
- (4) A flow-tube system is used that enables the AT fluid to be filled accurately without using a level gauge.
- (5) A manual shift mode (CommandShift) is provided that delivers sporty driving performance and reliable control in off-road driving.
- (6) Adaptive shift control has been adopted to suppress frequent shifting when climbing hills and to provide optimum engine braking on downhill grades.
- (7) The JF506E-R also incorporates the following controls.
 - A mode switch for selecting the desired driving mode among three settings--Normal, Sport and Snow
 - Adaptive learning control for the shift time to suppress changes in shift shock over time
 - Real-time feedback control of the hydraulic pressure during shifting so as to suppress variance in shift shock

お使いいただいている代表車種



Rover 75 Tourer

Typical models fitted with the JF506E-R (FPO)



Freelander

2.5Lクラス中型FF車用 スチールベルト式CVT(ADO)の紹介

Introducing the Steel-belt CVT (ADO) for 2.5-liter Class Midsize Front-drive Cars

2001年1月に日産自動車(株)様のプリメーラ/プリメーラワゴンにスチ・ルベルト式CVTとして世界で初めて2.5Lクラスの乗用車に搭載された,FF車用スチールベルト式CVT(ADO)は,1997年に世界で初めて2Lクラス中型FF乗用車に搭載され,今日までに日産自動車(株)様の10数車種の車両に搭載され好評を得ているFF車用スチールベルト式CVT(CK2)に改良を加え,更なる高トルクFF車両へのCVT搭載ニーズに応えました.

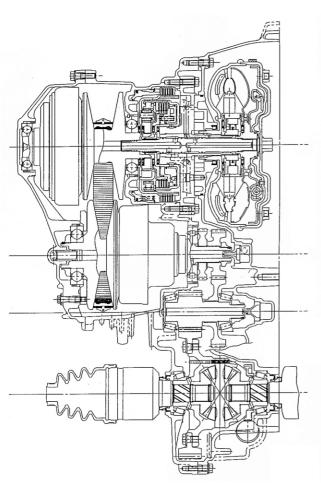


Fig. 1 Main cross-sectional view

The steel-belt CVT (ADO) for application to front-wheel-drive cars was fitted on Nissan Motor Co.'s Primera Sedan and Primera Wagon in January 2001. That marked the world's first implementation of a steel-belt CVT on 2.5-liter class passenger cars. The CVT (ADO) is an improved version of the steel-belt CVT (CK2), the world's first CVT to be used on 2.0-liter class midsize front-wheel-drive cars in 1997. Designed for application to front-wheel-drive vehicles, the CK2 unit has so far been used on more than ten Nissan passenger car models and has been highly popular with customers. The ADO unit meets market needs for a CVT with greater torque capacity that can be used on front-wheel-drive cars powered by larger engines.

Table 1 Specifications

Max. input torque			250 Nm	
Max. input speed			5,500 rpm	
Max. vehi	cle weight	(GVW)	1,77	6 kg
Control sy	/stem		Elect	tronic
Torque co	nverter		236 m	m dia.
	D range	Manual mode	D range	Manual mode
	Low	1st	2.100	2.100
		2nd		1.408
Pully		3rd		1.048
ratio		4th		0.812
		5th		0.630
	High	6th	0.434	0.469
	Rev.		1.4	32
Final driv	e gear ratio		5.4	73
No. of selector positions		5 (P, R, N, D, L) + Manual mode		
Overall length			401 mm	
Center distance between engine and differential			186	mm
Dry weigh	nt		89.4	kg

特 徴

(1)高トルク伝達技術

入力トルクの増加に伴い、従来のFF車用スチールベルト式CVT(CK2)に対し、プーリのベルト接触面摩耗対策として、ベルト接触面の表面処理技術を向上させ表面硬度アップを図り、プーリ強度の向上を行いました。

併せて,スチールリング枚数が12枚のベルト(ファンドーネ社製)の採用,高トルク容量トルクコンバータの採用,前後進切換え部の強化等を行いました.

(2)燃費性能向上

従来のCVTに対し,更なる低車速域へのロックアップ領域拡大,低油温時のロックアップ許可油温の見直しによる,より低油温時からのロックアップ作動及び油圧設定値の最適化による,損失トルクの低減を行い,更に約3~4%の燃費性能向上を達成しました.

(3)運転性向上

中高パーシャルスロットル開度の変速点変更 , スロットル踏込み時のロックアップ解除制御の採用 , Dレンジプーリ変速速度の見直しにより , 人間の感性にあった変速性能と , よりリニアでレスポンスの良い加速性能を実現しました . また , 6速マニュアルモードの採用によりアクセルを踏んだままシフト操作を可能としたことで , プロのドライバー並のレスポンスで運転する楽しさを実現しました .

お使いいただいている代表車種

Major Features

(1) Technologies for high torque capacity

To handle larger torque inputs, measures were taken to reduce wear of the pulley surface that comes in contact with the steel belt. The surface treatment applied to the pulley surface in contact with the belt was improved to increase surface hardness. This has enhanced the strength of the pulleys compared with those of the steel-belt CVT (CK2) used on front-wheel-drive cars so far.

In addition, a belt consisting of 12-layer steel bands and made by Van Doorne's Transmissie b.v. has been adopted along with a high torque-capacity torque converter and a stronger forward/reverse change mechanism, among other improvements.

(2) Improved fuel economy

Compared with the previous CVT, the region of lockup operation has been expanded toward a lower vehicle speed range and the allowable fluid temperature for lockup operation at low fluid temperatures has been revised. As a result, lockup operation is now possible at lower fluid temperatures and the hydraulic pressure settings have been optimized, thereby reducing torque loss. The CVT (ADO) enhances fuel economy further by about 3-4%.

(3) Improved driveability

The CVT (ADO) provides shifting performance matching human sensibilities and excellent acceleration with a more linear responsive. This has been achieved by changing the shift points at part throttle in the medium- to high-speed ranges, adopting a control to release the lockup clutch when the driver presses down on the accelerator and revising the ratio change speed of the pulleys in the D range. In addition, the adoption of a 6-speed manual shift mode enables drivers to shift while pressing the accelerator. As a result, users can enjoy the pleasure of shifting with the responsiveness of a professional driver.

Typical models fitted with the CVT



PRIMERA

新横浜開発センターの紹介

Introducing the Shin-Yokohama Engineering Center

木村 良幸* Yoshiyuki KIMURA

1. 概要

昨年(2001年)5月に開発部門の新しい拠点として 開設した新横浜開発センターを紹介する.

所在地:横浜市港北区新横浜 3-20-8 ベネックス S3ビル 3F & 4F

開設:2001年5月

従業員数:57人(職制・プロパー・派遣社員合計)

2002年1月現在

新横浜開発拠点は、AT & CVT用コントロール・ユニット(ATCU)の開発(設計)業務、ATCU開発のための開発支援ツール開発およびATCU用ソフトの開発品質向上のための仕組み作りを分担する部署の一部が集まり、新横浜開発センター(3F部分)として01年5月に開設した、引続き01年11月と02年1月の2回に分けて、油圧制御設計を行う油圧制御開発課(4F部分)の一部が移転合流し、3Fおよび4Fで広義の新横浜開発センターを構成している。



Fig. 1 Shin-Yokohama Engineering Center

1. Overview

The Shin-Yokohama Engineering Center opened in May 2001 as the new hub of the company's development activities.

Location: 3rd & 4th Floors, Benex S3 Building

3-20-8 Shin-Yokohama, Minato Ward,

Yokohama

Date of establishment: May 2001

Number of employees: 57 (including temporary staff)

as of January 2002

The Shin-Yokohama Engineering Center opened on the third floor of the Benex S3 Building in Shin-Yokohama in May 2000. This new engineering center combines part of the group responsible for developing control units for ATs and CVTs (ATCUs) with part of the group in charge of designing support tools for ATCU development and organizing structures for improving the quality of the ATCU software developed in-house. In November 2001 and again in January 2002, part of the Hydraulic Control Development Section that designs hydraulic controls was also transferred to the fourth floor of the same building. Thus, the Shin-Yokohama Engineering Center now occupies the third and fourth floors of the building.

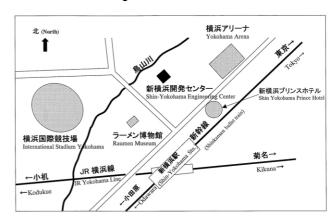


Fig. 2 Location of Shin-Yokohama Engineering Center

Shin-Yokohama Engineering Center

新横浜開発センター

2. 設立のねらい

1999年のJTT社発足以来,開発部門の事業所拠点は富士と厚木に分散しており,今後の開発業務の質・量両面での急激な拡大を考えると,新しい開発拠点への進出が緊急の課題になってきていた.

一方、AT & CVTのさらなる魅力品質を創出していくため、電子制御技術に期待するところがますます大きくなっていくことと、客先自動車メーカの開発スピードに対応していくためには手戻りのない迅速な開発スキルを持つことが必須になってきている。これらの理由から電子制御技術分野の野の緊急かつ大幅な増強が、当社の発展の鍵を握っている。このような背景から電子・制御技術開発分野の一部を新しい拠点に移し、革新的な開発業務に取組むこととした。

拠点の候補地として富士・厚木両地区からのアクセスが比較的容易で,かつ電子制御関係のエンジニアの採用にも有利な新横浜地区が選ばれた.近年電子制御分野のエンジニアの採用が非常に難しくなってききていることから,人口密度の高い首都圏中心部分に拠点を開設することにより,採用のしやすさも考えて決定した.

3. 環境

新横浜開発センターは,新横浜駅から北東方向に 徒歩で5-6分のところにあり,周辺はオフィス街に なっている.付近には42階建て円筒状ビルの新横 浜プリンスホテル,7万人の収容ができる国際競技 場,1.7万人収容の横浜アリーナなどがあって,イベ ントがある日には付近の交通渋滞や駐車場が塞が ること,新横浜駅が大混雑になることなど,通常 の勤務でも注意が必要になっているが反面アフタ ーファイブの楽しみには事欠かない環境である.

事務所の北側には市道を挟んで鶴見川支流の鳥山川が流れており,この河川敷が「新横浜駅前公園」となっていて,昼休み中の散策などもでき,恵まれた場所に位置している.

建物は1985年に建設された12階建てビルで,その3Fおよび4F部分を借用している.占有部分の床面積は約1,000㎡で,そのほぼ2/3が設計室になっている.各エンジニアの机は高さ120cmのパテイションで仕切られており,業務への集中ができるよう配慮されている.残りの1/3部分はATCUの機能チェックのためのデバッグ室,プログラム集中検討用の戦略室,客先及びサプライヤーや社内関連部署との打合せのための二つの会議室等で構成されている.

2. Objective

Since its establishment as a new company in 1999, JATCO TransTechnology Ltd. has had two development centers, located in Fuji and Atsugi. Opening an additional new development base, however, became an urgent matter, given the projected rapid expansion of development work both in terms of quality and quantity in the future. Meanwhile, growing expectations for electronic control technology to create even more attractive ATs and CVTs as well as the shortened development cycles of the automobile makers have required us to obtain development capabilities quickly so as to avoid subsequent revisions. For these reasons, there have been demands for further advancement of and innovation in the electronic control field, where quick and significant enhancement of technology holds one key to the company's success. This was the environment that led to the decision to move part of the Electronic Control Development Section to the new center to embark on innovative development work.

Among the candidate locations, the Shin-Yokohama area was chosen since it has relatively easy access to both Fuji and Atsugi and is also advantageous for recruiting engineers in the electronic control field. As it has become quite difficult to hire engineers in this field lately, ease of recruiting was also one of the factors considered in making a decision to open a new development hub in the center of a metropolitan area with a high population density.

3. Surroundings

The Shin-Yokohama Engineering Center is located in a business area, about a five- or six-minute walk northeast of Shin-Yokohama Station. As its neighbors, the new building has the forty-two-story cylindrical-shaped Shin-Yokohama Prince Hotel, the International Stadium and the Yokohama Arena that accommodate 70,000 and 17,000 spectators, respectively. Therefore, when an event is held, the employees of the Shin-Yokohama Engineering Center cannot avoid encountering traffic jams, packed parking lots and waves of people in Shin-Yokohama Station. On the positive side, they have plenty of places where they can enjoy nightlife after work.

The center is also blessed with a splendid natural environment. On the north side, the Toriyama River, a branch of the Tsurumi River, flows between two city streets. The employees can also enjoy taking a walk during their lunch hour around the Shin-Yokohama Station Park that stretches along the banks of the river.

The Shin-Yokohama Engineering Center occupies the third and fourth floors of a twelve-story building built in 1985. The total floor area is approximately 1,000 m2, two thirds of which is used as a design room. Engineers' desks are separated by 1.2-meter partitions, giving them ample space to concentrate on their jobs. The remaining one-third consists of a debugging room, a room for intensive study of control programs and two conference rooms for meetings with customers and suppliers.

会議室には,富士・厚木両地区との3元TV会議が可能な設備が設置されており,また各人には事務所内で使用するPHSが貸与され,情報通信の先端を行く新しいオフィス作りをめざしている.

The conference rooms are equipped with facilities for holding three-way videoconferences with both Fuji and Atsugi. With an eye toward having state-of-the-art information technology, the center also provides all employees with a PHS mobile phone for use in the office.



Fig. 3 Working areas at Shin-Yokohama Engineering Center

4.新横浜開発センターの今後

ATCU開発業務は新横浜開発センターと富士・厚木両地区にある電子制御開発課とで分担しているほか,油圧制御開発業務も3拠点に分散することになった.今後の業務量の拡大と,高質化を効率良く進めて行くためこの分野の開発拠点を統合・集中していく案や,さらに上流の業務分野を分担しているシステム開発部署と統合する案等数案の将来構想案の検討を進めている.

いずれにしても10年後,20年後の当社はAT & CVT分野で世界をリードする,逞しい企業に成長していることをめざしている.その過程で着々と実力をつけていく開発部門があり,さらに新横浜開発センターがそのパイオニアとしての大きな役割を担っていくのではないかと考えている.

新横浜開発センターは,社内各部の強力なご支援をいただいて開設することができた.誌上をお借りして各部の皆様に心から御礼を申し上げたい.

4. Outlook for the Shin-Yokohama Engineering Center

Hydraulic control development work is also divided among the three centers in Shin-Yokohama, Fuji and Atsugi, like the ATCU development operations. To cope with the growing workload and to improve quality efficiently, discussions are under way to explore future strategies. Proposals have been made to consolidate the three development centers and to integrate the Shin-Yokohama Engineering Center with the system development group, which is in charge of clarifying the performance and specifications required for ATCUs.

In any case, we are determined to continue our efforts to become an outstanding company that leads the world in the AT and CVT fields in ten to twenty years. As the development division steadily builds up its strength in this process, we believe that the Shin-Yokohama Engineering Center will play a major role as a pioneer in this field. The Shin-Yokohama Engineering Center was established through the tremendous support provided by various departments of the company. We would like to take this occasion to extend our deepest appreciation to everyone for their assistance.

Author



Yoshiyuki KIMURA

ジヤトコ・ヨーロッパ(JEG)の紹介

An introduction of the JATCO Europe GmbH

吉本 卓郎^{*} Takuro YOSHIMOTO

1. 概要

社 名 JATCO Europe GmbH

所在地 ドイツ連邦共和国

ニーダーザクセン州ヴォルフスブルグ市

創 立 1990年12月11日 資本金 165万独マルク

従業員 66名

業 種 自動車用A/T(オートマティックトランス

ミッション)の研究開発・輸入・販売

当社は、自動車用AT専門メーカー、ジヤトコ(株)の欧州会社であり、欧州でのATの研究開発・輸入・販売を主な事業としている.我々の製品であるATは、自動車におけるユニット・部品の中でも最も高度、かつ精度のある技術が求められている.最も高度、かつ精度のある技術が求められている.その研究開発・販売には、緊密なるお客様との連携が必須であり、我々は、そのために、お客様により近い場所で、我々の活動を行うことをポリシーとしている.拠点としては、ドイツでは、ヴォルフスブルグに本社、ケルンには出先、イギリスには、バーミンガム郊外に支店を展開している.更に、ベルギー・ブリュッセル郊外に支店、フランス・パリに事務所を有している.

1. Profile

Registered Name JATCO Europe GmbH

Location Wolfsburg, Niedersachsen, F.R.G.

Established December 11, 1990 Capital 1.65million DM

Employees 66

Activity R&D, Import and Sales of

AT(Automatic Transmission)

We, JATCO Europe GmbH, are the European entity of JATCO Ltd, Japan - a manufacturer specialised in ATs for automobiles. Our main activities are R&D and import and sales of the AT in Europe. The AT is well recognised as an industrial product which highly requires the most advanced and accurate technology amongst all automotive units, components and parts. A close communication to establish an intimate relationship with our customer car makers is crucial for us as an AT maker. It is, therefore, our company policy to work as close as possible to our car makers. This has led us to deploy our business basis: in Germany, headquarters in Wolfsburg, an office in Cologne, and there are also branches near Birmingham in the UK, near Brussels in Belgium, and an office in Paris, France.



Fig. 1 JEG office

^{*} JATCO Europe GmbH

2. 設立のねらい

この数年,世界自動車業界の変動は激しく,メ ーカー間の合従連衡が急速に進み,資本提携・参 加,合併の話題に事欠くことはない.この背景に は,更なる技術・販売革新,環境対応が迫ってい ることが考えられる.つまり,これ迄にない巨大 な投資・資金力が必要となり,最早,単独での対 応は困難であるということを物語っている. 従来 の内製政策をかなぐり捨て,自動車メーカーは, 自動車そのものの開発・生産・販売に専念,ユニ ット・部品は専門メーカーからの調達に委ねると の動きが,加速度的に進んでいる.その中でも, ATは, 多段化, 無段化, ハイブリット等, 最先端 技術が要求され、各自動車メーカーの関心を最も 集める分野である.しかも,有力専門メーカーと しては,当社を含め,世界に僅か3社しかなく,当 社に対する注目度は極めて高い.

日本,米国に較べ,ATの普及率が,未だ低い欧州は,今後の発展が大きく期待できる市場だと云える.

1990年から,その懐に飛び込み,BMWから始まり,VW,LAND ROVER,JAGUAR,MG ROVERと実績を挙げてきた.今後とも,お客様とのより一層綿密なコミュニケーションを図りながら,CVTに代表される当社独自のテクノロジーにて,更なる業績の拡大を目指している.

3. 環境

我々の本社のあるヴォルフスブルグは,旧東ドイツ国境近くに位置し,ベルリンとは約200kmの距離である.元々,小さな村に過ぎなかったヴォルフスブルグが,今日の発展をみるようになったのは,1938年にVWが工場を開いてからである.今や,欧州最大の自動車会社VWのお膝元として,広く知られている.それは,まさしく,企業城下町であり,この町の人は,何らかの形で,VWと関係を持っているといえよう.その良い例が町行く車で,その9割は,VWグループのモデルといった印象である.

この町の名所として、誰もが思い浮かべるのは、歴史的な建物としては、この町の名前の由来ともなった、中世のヴォルフスブルグ城と、現代的なものとしては、VWのクルマの町(Autostadt)であろう、城は、現在、美術館、歴史博物館として市民が足を寄せている。Autostadtは、VWの超現代的建物である。そのコンセプトは全く新しく、車両置き場でもあり、ショールームでもあり、イベントセンターでもあり、その定義付けは単純ではない、若い世代の人気の場所である。

2. Purpose of the establishment

In recent years, the world of automotive industries has been changing drastically and dramatically. M&A and alliance took place everywhere. Japan is no exception any more. An even further renovation of technology /sales as well as a lot severer environmental requirement are the issues that every car manufacturer is now tackling, and which eventually requires a huge amount of capital and resources to invest. The consequence is that it becomes very hard for any maker to sustain a burden of investment alone. By renouncing an "in-house made" policy which has been in practice by car makers for many years, they are currently accelerating on the creation of a new system where they can focalise their resources on automobile R&D and production and sales. Other areas such as units, components and parts are to be purchased and supplied from specialized makers. As a product of the most advanced technology such as a CVT(Constant Variable Transmission), Step AT and Hybrid, the AT is, amongst others, the most focal domain where high interest and attention are shown by car manufacturers. In particular, the attention focused towards JATCO as a leading company out of 3 AT makers existing in the world, is outstanding.

The European market, with a lower penetration of ATs in comparison with that of the Japanese and US market, is supposed to have a big potential of augmentation of AT demand in the coming years. Based in the heart of the European market since 1990, we started our business first with BMW, then grew with VW, Land Rover, Jaguar and MG Rover. Being deeply involved in the new car development of several European auto manufacturers through our unique technologies, we are confident that our business in Europe is promised to expand further.

3. Our location

Our head office is situated near the former East German boarder in Wolfsburg. The German capital, Berlin, is only about 200km away. Wolfsburg used to be only a small village. However, since VW built up factories for the production of the Beetle, it has kept growing to be renowned for the city of VW, the largest automobile manufacturer in Europe. It is basically a corporate city of VW. Everyone in the city seems to be involved with the manufacturer directly or indirectly. A good example is that it gives an impression that 90% of cars running in the town must be models of VW or those of the VW group.



Fig.2 Autostadt

ヴォルフスブルグから15分間程度のドライブの 町として,ブラウンシュバイクがある.ミュンへ ンの礎を築いた王様として知られるハインリッヒ 獅子王の町として有名である.この地方第二の都 市として,文化・経済の中心となっている.歴史 的に由緒ある町だけに,聖ミカエル教会,旧市街, 城砦,獅子像等,名所は多い.我々の駐在員が住 む町でもある.



Fig.3 Lion of the castle

最後に、この地方最大の都市であるハノーバーについて触れておかなければならない、最も標準的なドイツ語(ハイ・ジャーマン)の町として知られ、また、国際見本市の町としても有名である、ヴォルフスブルグからは、100km程離れてはいるが、ここが最も近いハブ空港であり、我々が最も頻度多く使う空港の町でもある。

The city's landmark, which naturally comes up in everyone's mind, is the historical castle of Wolfsburg where the city's name was derived, and the modern Autostadt(auto town) of VW. The medieval castle, which has an artgallery and museum, is now a cultural centre for citizens. Autostadt, a super modern architecture under an innovative concept, is a car stockyard, a new car reception, a car showroom and an event hall all at the same time. With its multiple characteristics and functions, this is now the hottest spot for the young generation.

Braunscheweig, only a 15 minute drive from Wolfsburg, is the city of Henry the Lion, well known and respected as a founder of Munich, as well as the centre of not only culture but also economy as the second largest city of this region. Its long history and tradition preserve quite a few monuments and sites worthy of visiting, such as The Church of St. Michael, The Old City(Altstad), Remains of City Wall, Lion of the Castle etc. There are several families from our company who enjoy life in this city.

Last but not least, our reference must be made to Hannover. It is the largest city in this region and recognised as the centre of High German, which is considered as the standard German language. In addition, International Messe (exhibition) is another element that makes the city of Hannover so well known world wide. This city is particularly important to us, as it has the closest international airport, although it is about 100km away, which we use almost every day.

Author



Takuro YOSHIMOTO

特 許 紹 介

Patents

1. 自動変速装置

1. Automotive automatic transmission structure

(Fig. 1)

(Fig.1)

出 願:1991.9.13 特願平3-234675 登 録:1999.10.8 特許第2988542号

名 称:自動変速装置

発明者: JATCO Europe GmbH 植松 祐一

【目的】

ブレーキ機構の内側にある回転体の回転数を検出する回転数センサが設けられている自動変速装置において,ブレーキ機構と回転数センサとが軸方向に並列に配置されており,この軸方向寸法の短縮化を図る構造とすることを目的とする.

【発明の構成】

ブレーキ機構(5)の内側にある回転体(4c)の回転数を検出する回転数センサ(7)が設けられている自動変速装置において、ブレーキ機構(5)を構成する部品の一部にセンサ貫通用穴(5h)または切り欠きを形成し、かつ、このセンサ貫通用穴(5h)または切り欠きを貫通させて回転体(4c)の回転数を検出する回転数センサ(7)を設置した構成とした。

Application Number: 3-234675 Application Date: 9.13.1991 Patent Number: 2988542 Registration Date: 10.8.1999

Title: Automotive automatic transmission structure Inventor: Yuichi Uematsu JATCO Europe GmbH

[Summary of the invention]

It is an object of the present invention to provide an automatic transmission which may be designed to be shorter in an axial dimension than conventional automatic transmissions.

In order to accomplish the aforementioned and other objects, an automatic transmission is provided, in which a rotatable member is provided with a brake mechanism arranged at an outside portion thereof, a sensor is arranged so as to detect rotation of the rotatable member(4c), and a portion of the brake mechanism(5) is formed with an opening for permitting access of the sensor(7) to the rotatable member(4c), the sensor(7) being mounted disposed in the opening(5h).

According to this invention, an automatic transmission is provided including: a transmission casing; a high clutch; a low and reverse brake arranged radially outward of the high clutch, the low and reverse brake including a clutch plate assembly which is axially offset from the high clutch toward a central area of the transmission casing, piston, and an arm member, the arm member(5e) including a cut out portion(5h); and a sensor, the sensor(7) detecting a rotational speed of a clutch drum(4a) of the high clutch and penetrating the transmission casing at a location corresponding to the cut out portion(5h) of the arm member(5e) of the low and reverse brake.

【作用・効果】

従来は,ブレーキバンド(ブレーキ機構)を避けて回転数センサを設けているため,ブレーキバンドと回転数センサとが軸方向に並列に配置されていることになり,軸方向寸法が長くなるのが通常であったが,回転数センサ(7)がブレーキ機構(5)を構成する部品の一部に形成されたセンサ貫通用穴(5h)又は切り欠きを貫通して設置されているため,回転数センサ(7)とブレーキ機構(5)とが軸方向に重なって配置されることになり,自動変速装置の軸方向寸法が短くなりコンパクト化を図ることができる.

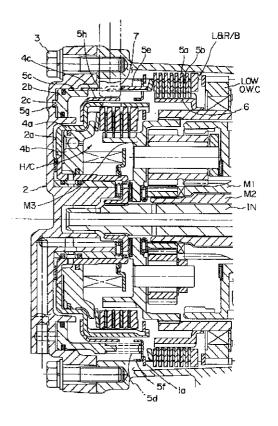


Fig.1

2. 自動変速機及び排気ブレーキ装置の制御装置

(Fig.2 & Fig.3)

出 願:1991.3.25 特願平3-84793 登 録:1999.9.10 特許第2977929号

名 称:自動変速機及び排気ブレーキ装置の制御装置

発明者:第四商品設計グループ 甲田 譲二

【目的】

この発明は,エンジンブレーキ状態での変速中に排気ブレーキ装置の作動が解除される制御装置において,排気ブレーキ装置の故障などによって変速中に排気ブレーキ装置の作動が解除されないとしても,クラッチ,ブレーキなどの必要トルク容量が不足して,自動変速機の走行不良が発生するのを防止することを目的としている.

2. Exhaust braking control apparatus

(Fig.2 & Fig.3)

Application Number: 3-84793 Application Date: 3.25.1991 Patent Number: 2977929 Registration Date: 9.10.1999

Title: Exhaust braking control apparatus

Inventor: Jouji Kouta Product Development Group No.4

[Summary of the invention]

It is a main object of the invention to provide an improved exhaust braking control apparatus which can ensure freedom from working fluid pressure shortage caused when exhaust braking continues during a gear shifting operation.

There is provided, in accordance with the invention, an exhaust braking control apparatus for use with an automotive vehicle having an engine, an exhaust passage through which exhaust gases are discharged from the engine to the atmosphere, and an automatic transmission.

【発明の構成】

エンジンブレーキ操作が検出された後のダウンシフトの際に,排気ブレーキ装置を一時的に非作動状態とする排気ブレーキー時解除手段と,排気ブレーキー時解除手段が正常に作動してない場合には,自動変速機の変速車速を排気ブレーキの一時解除が正常に作動する場合よりも低車速側に変更する変速線変更手段とを設け,この変速線に基いてダウンシフトが行われるようにした.

【作用・効果】

排気ブレーキー時解除手段が正常に作動してない場合には、変速線を非故障時に比べて低車速側に変更し、該変速線にてダウンシフトを行う構成とすることにより、排気ブレーキの一時解除が正常に作動する非故障時に比べて低車速側でダウンシフトを行うようにしたので、クラッチ、ブレーキの必要とするトルク容量が小さくなり、逆駆動力は排気ブレーキが作動している分だけ非故障時に比べて高くなっているものの、クラッチ、ブレーキのトルク容量が確保され、クラッチやブレーキの耐久性が向上し、走行不良が発生するのを防止することができる.

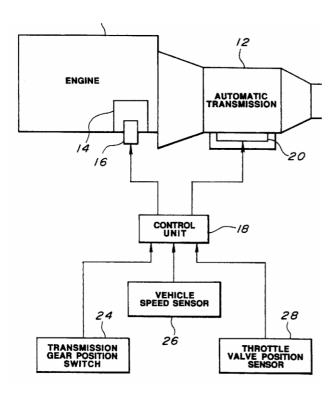
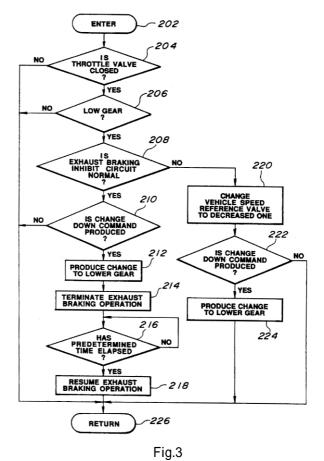


Fig.2

The exhaust braking control apparatus comprises a control valve situated for movement between a fully-open position and a fully-closed position within the exhaust passage to control exhaust gas flow through the exhaust passage, and a sensor sensitive to vehicle speed for producing a sensor signal indicative of a sensed vehicle speed.

The exhaust braking control apparatus also includes a control unit including means for producing an engine braking command signal when the automatic transmission is in a select range for engine braking, means for moving the control valve in a closing direction to provide the exhaust braking effect, means for producing a gear change from a higher gear to a lower gear in the automatic transmission when the sensed vehicle speed is less than a reference value, means for inhibiting the exhaust breaking operation during the gear change produced in the automatic transmission after the engine braking command signal is produced, means for producing a failure signal in the event of failure of the exhaust braking operation inhibiting means, and means responsive to the failure signal for decreasing the reference value.



社外技術賞受賞一覧 (2001年1月1日~2001年12月31日)

受賞年月	賞名	受賞技術	受 賞	者
2001.4	2000年度日本機械学会賞(技術) (社団法人 日本機械学会)	自動車用ハーフトロイダル式無段変速機	(現)日産自動車(株) (受賞時:第 日産自動車(株) 日産自動車(株) 日本精工(株) 出光興産(株)	川口 明生 一商品設計部) 高田 才明 中野 正樹 町田 尚 畑 一志
2001.5	平成12年度日本トライボロジー学会技術 (社団法人日本トライボロジー学	^ ·	機能部品開発グループ 日産自動車(株) 日本精工(株) 出光興産(株) 出光興産(株)	荒州町町町田一大

社外技術発表一覧 (2001年1月1日~2001年12月31日)

発 表 日	発 表 先	表 題	発 表	者
2001.2.21	(社)日本トライボロジー学会 第46回トライボロジー先端講座 21世紀極限のトライボロジー技術(東京)	動力伝達とトライボロジー技術	第四商品開発グループ 機能部品開発グループ	日比 利文 荒川 慶江
2001.5.14~15	(社)日本トライボロジー学会 トライボロジー会議2001 春(横浜)	ベルトCVTフルードの金属間摩擦 係数の役割と要求される性能	機能部品開発グループ 機能部品開発グループ	茂木 靖裕 村上 靖宏
2001.5.14~15	(社)日本トライボロジー学会 トライボロジー会議2001 春 (横浜)	自動車用トロイダルCVT油の 実用化開発	機能部品開発グループ 日産自動車(株) 日本精工(株) 出光興産(株) 出光興産(株)	荒川慶江中野正樹町田一志坪内俊之
2001.5.23~25	(社)自動車技術会 学術講演会 春季大会 (横浜)	CVT変速比制御への2自由度制 御検討	日産自動車(株) 日産自動車(株) 日産自動車(株) 実験部 防衛大学校 防衛大学校	金安 選野 田 報 憲美 大
2001.5.23~25	(社)自動車技術会 学術講演会 春季大会 (横浜)	ロックアップクラッチのスリップ回転 速度制御系の一設計方法	日産自動車(株) 日産自動車(株) 日産自動車(株) 実験部 防衛大学校 防衛大学校	瀬川 哲 安浅野 印 類 目 越 計 喜美雄
2001.5.23~25	(社)自動車技術会 学術講演会 春季大会 (横浜)	ハーフトロイダル型無段変速機の 電子制御開発	日産自動車(株) 日産自動車(株) 日産自動車(株) 日産自動車(株) 新横浜開発センター (株)ユニシアジェックス	皆用 成 核

発 表 日	発 表 先	表 題	Ĺ	発表	皆	
2001.5.23~25	(社)自動車技術会 学術講演会 春季大会 (横浜)	自動変速機油の湿式摩合性試験方法の開発	擦材適	トヨタ自動車 (株) 出光興産(株) (株)ジャパンエナジー ネヌエスケー・ワーナー (株) 日石三菱 (株) 日本ループリゾール (株) アイシン・エイ・ダブリュ (株) コスモ石油ルプリカンツ (株) (株)本田技術研究所 機能部品開発グループ 機能部品開発グループ 昭和シェル石油 (株)	宮市伊梅川和原小栃古前村光田橋藤澤崎田 林木本田上井	俊文栄靖寿幸幸 光 靖秀将彦高記弘之雄博弘正誠宏明
2001.5.23~25	(社)自動車技術会 学術講演会 春季大会 (横浜)	自動変速機油のせん断ま 験方法の検討	安定性試	ローマックス・ジャパン 機能部品開発グループ 出光興産(株) 三菱自動車工業(株) ジェブロン オロナイト ダイハツ工業(株) 日野自動車(株) (株)本田技術研究所 トヨタ自動車(株) スズキ(株) 三洋化成工業(株) マツダ(株) 日石三菱(株)	浜村市伊梅北田古宮八由岩和口上橋藤原村島本田木岐崎田	靖俊由勝真一光 章 章寿仁宏彦紀海一直正将次剛夫之
2001.5.30	(社)自動車技術会中部支部 研究発表会(名古屋)	新開発FR5速ATの紹介	`	第三商品開発グループ	水島	輝久
2001.6.5~7	Global Powertrain Congress (Detroit, USA)	Development of Half-Toro	oidal CVT	第四商品開発グループ 第四商品開発グループ 第四商品開発グループ 日産自動車(株)	日比 竹内 住 山本	利文 泰夫 建
2001.8.11~16	International Symposium of Young Scholars on Mechanics and Material Engineering for Science and Experiments (Hunan, P. R. China)	Studies on effect of contact fatigue of gear	oil on	第一商品開発グループ	陳	勇
2001.8.23~24	TOPTEC (Detroit, USA)	Development of steel by for medium-sized FWD with 2.5-liter engines		第四商品開発グループ 第四商品開発グループ 実験部	萩原 江村 山本	善親 大輔 祥久
2001.8.27~30	(社)日本機械学会 2001年 年次大会(福井)	4.5L乗用車用縦置き新 の開発	5速AT	日産自動車(株) 第三商品開発グループ	御子柴 水島	美典 輝久
2001.10.23~25	(社)自動車技術会 学術講演会 秋季大会(札幌)	スリップロックアップATF	の開発	機能部品開発グループ 機能部品開発グループ 機能部品開発グループ	矢内原 村上 荒川	梨花 靖宏慶江
2001.10.23~25	(社)自動車技術会 学術講演会 秋季大会(札幌)	自動変速機の変速性能ションシステムに関する		新横浜開発センター 先行開発部	勝 松村	生水 利夫
2001.10.23~25	(社)自動車技術会 学術講演会 秋季大会(札幌)	新型5速オートマチックト ションの開発	ランスミッ	日産自動車(株) 日産自動車(株) 日産自動車(株) 第三商品開発グループ JATCO USA, Inc	御子 ^柴 高田 兼久 島 加藤	美男 岩明紀 大学 大学 大学 大学 大学 大学 大学 大学 大学 大学 大学 大学 大学
2001.10.25~26	3rd Symposium - Control systems for the powertrain of motor vehicles (Berlin, Germany)	Integrated hybrid at transmission	utomatic	先行開発部 先行開発部 先行開発部 先行開発部	藤川 吹 中 望 月	雅 真 健 政 治 治
2001.11.28	(社)自動車技術会 シンポジウム『動力伝達系の最新技 術2001』(東京)	FR用大容量5速自動変 開発	 速機の	第三商品開発グループ 日産自動車(株) 日産自動車(株)	道岡 御子場 村上賢	浩文 毕美典 译一郎

編集後記

1999年10月にジヤトコ・トランステクノロジー株式会社が設立して2年半が経過しましたが、本年4月より「ジヤトコ」というブランドと社名を同一にして、「ジヤトコ株式会社」に変更することになりました。これに伴い、本誌「ジヤトコ・トランステクノロジー・レビュー」も「ジヤトコ・テクニカル・レビュー」に改名するとともに、第3号を発刊するにあたって昨年発表した新型5速ATをささえる技術の特集を組むなど一層充実したものに仕上げました。また今年は弊社と三菱自動車工業株式会社様のAT・CVT部門との事業統合を迎えます。1999年のジャトコ社とトランステクノロジー社との合併により、たくさんの車種に応えられるようなAT・CVTの品揃えを実現させましたが、今回の事業統合はさらなるシナジー効果そして量の効果を生み出すものと期待しています。

ジヤトコ・テクニカル・レビューも新しい仲間を加え、お客さまと共に進化していきたいと考えています。最後に執筆者の方々には非常に限られた時間の中で原稿を作成していただきこの場を借りて御礼申し上げます。

- ジヤトコ・テクニカル・レビュー事務局 前田英樹 -

編集委員会(Editorial Committee)

池田孝 取締役 常務 Koichi Ikeda Senior Vice President & Member of the Board 員(Members) 丸 裕 情報システム部 Yuji Kanamaru Management Information Systems Department 野 勲 品質管理部 Isao Kono Quality Administration Department 第二営業部 坂 本 重信 Shigenobu Sakamoto Sales & Marketing Department No. 2 木 信 開発管理部 Shinichi Aoki R&D Administration Department 永 原 開発管理部 Hiroshi Nagahara **R&D** Administration Department

委員長(Chairman)

竹

栴

内

Tohru Takeuchi

里和

Kazuo Umesato

Product Development Group No. 4 機能部品開発グループ Functional Component Development Group

第四商品開発グループ

横 山嘉 実験部 Yoshiaki Yokoyama **Experiment Department** 実験部 北 雄 Yuji Kita **Experiment Department** 村 ユニット技術部 博 Hiroshi Imamura Unit Production Engineering Department 村 時 生産管理部 Tokio Shimamura Production Control Department 先行開発グループ 加 藤 芳 Yoshiaki Kato Advance Development Group 事務局(Secretariats) 開発管理部

務局(Secretariats) 前 田 英 樹 Eiki Maeda 佐 藤 真 琴

性 膝 其 今
Makoto Sato
山 元 浩 子
Hiroko Yamamoto

R&D Administration Department 開発管理部 R&D Administration Department 開発管理部

R&D Administration Department

ジヤトコ・テクニカル・レビュー No.3

C禁無断転載

発 行 2002年6月

発行・編集人 ジヤトコ・テクニカル・レビュー

編集委員会

発 行 所 ジヤトコ株式会社

生

開発管理部

静岡県富士市今泉700-1 〒417-8585 0545(51)0431

印刷所 スルガ印刷

静岡県富士市今泉3丁目6-20

JATCO Technical Review No.3

June, 2002

Publisher JATCO Technical Review (Editor) Editorial Committee

Distributor R & D Administration Department

JATCO Ltd

700-1, Imaizumi, Fuji City Shizuoka, 417-8585, Japan

Copyrights of all articles described in this Review have been preserved by JATCO Ltd. For permission to reproduce articles in quantity or for use in other print material, contact the chairman of the editorial committee.